Index of Proper Names and Subjects to the Canterbury Tales.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales
TOGETHER WITH
COMPARISONS AND SIMILES, METAPHORS AND PROVERBS, MAXIMS, ETC., IN THE SAME.
COLLECTED BY
PROF. HIRAM CORSON, LL.D.
OF CORNELL UNIVERSITY.

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.,
AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,
AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.
1911, for the issue of 1884.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART I.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Proper Names and Subjects</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addition to the Index</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scriptural Quotations and Allusions (cf. p. 10)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART II.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparisons and Similes (cf. p. 19)</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphors (cf. p. 51)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs, Maxims, and Sententious Expressions in General</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cf. p. 67)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayers, Entreaties, Imprecations, etc. (cf. p. 64)</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction (by the Rev. Prof. Skeat) vii
INTRODUCTION.

BY THE REV. PROFESSOR SKEAT.

The present issue was originally announced in the following terms:—"The issue for 1884, in the First Series, is to be LXXII. The Six-Text, Part IX, with color'd Lithographs of 6 Tellers of Tales and 6 emblematical Figures from the Cambridge Univers. MS. Gg. 4.27; Forewords, Title-pages for the three volumes, &c.; and Prof. Hiram Corson's Index to the Subjects and Names of The Canterbury Tales."

It has been recently discovered, after a careful enquiry, that a portion of the work thus promised has long been ready, but the publication of the whole was delayed for the sake of the remainder.

The coloured cuts were completed long ago, and are now issued. It will be seen that all the pictures are from the Cambridge MS. The six Tellers of Tales are the Monk, the Pardoner, the Reeve, the Cook, the Wife of Bath, and the Manciple. The six Emblematical Figures are Envy, Charity, Gluttony, Abstinence, Lechery and Chastity.

The "Forewords" were never written, and it is doubtless on this account that the issue was delayed. Dr. Furnivall had already issued, in 1868, his "Temporary Preface to the Six-text Edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, Part I." But no continuation of this, in the form of "Part II.," was ever written. No doubt his intention was to write a full preface, to be called "Forewords," in
place of the "Temporary Preface"; but the opportunity for this never came; and it would now be unadvisable to substitute anything for it. The "Temporary Preface, Part I.," must be allowed to continue to occupy its place. And I think it must always be a subject for regret that the "Attempt to show the right order of the Tales" was held to be a justification for deliberately disturbing their order. The placing of Groups C and D in their present positions gives us an order which appears in no MS. whatever, and dissociates the Six-text, to that extent, from all the MSS. which it is meant to reproduce. Surely the best course would have been to keep to the order in the Ellesmere MS., on which the Six-text was founded. The misfortune is that editors have to follow suit, and the dislocated order cannot easily be set right again.

Neither are "the Title-pages for the three volumes, &c.," here included. Such "temporary" title-pages as have been already printed are practically sufficient; we are not likely to forget the fact that the famous "Six-text" edition of the Tales was edited throughout by Dr. Furnivall himself; and that, but for his energy and supervision, it would, probably, never have appeared.

It is not quite clear of what the "three volumes" consist. As far as I can judge, vol. i. was meant to include Group A, and its appendix, the Tale of Gamelyn. Vol. ii. may include Groups B and C; and vol. iii., perhaps, the rest, though this would make vol. iii. far too large. It might be better to include B, C, D, and E in vol. ii. Note that we cannot make a volume end with D, because the "side-notes" on p. 402 belong to the following group. I have found, in practice, that the most convenient way is to have four volumes, arranged thus: vol. i., A and Gamelyn; vol. ii., B and C; vol. iii., D, E, F, G, H, and the Parson's Prologue in Group I.; and vol. iv., the Parson's Tale by itself. But other arrangements can be made, and the problem is best solved by not limiting the
number of volumes, but leaving each subscriber free to follow his own method.

Professor Corson's Index.

It remains to say a few words as to the very useful Index compiled by the late Professor Hiram Corson, of Cornell University. It has long been in type, but it has no words of introduction. I therefore take upon myself to supply them.

It will be seen that there are really no less than seven indexes; and the book consists, accordingly, of two parts, the second of which begins at p. 97.

Part I. includes the three indexes following:—(a) Index of Proper Names; (b) Addition to the Index, pp. 87–93; (c) Scriptural Quotations and Allusions, pp. 94, 95.

Part II. includes:—(a) Comparisons and Similes, pp. 97–108; (b) Metaphors, pp. 108–111; (c) Proverbs, Maxims, &c., pp. 111–117; (d) Prayers, Entreaties, &c., 118–121.

Some of the information is repeated. Thus the Scriptural Quotations at pp. 94, 95, largely agree with the list of quotations given under the heading "Bible" at pp. 10, 11; indeed, the earlier list is, in some instances, the fuller of the two. In Part II., the Comparisons and Similes may be compared with the list of the same at pp. 19, 20; the Metaphors, with the list at p. 51; the Proverbs, with the list at pp. 67, 68; and the Prayers, with that at 64, 65. These repetitions are helpful rather than superfluous.

A few words are further necessary with regard to the references.

These are all to the paging and lines of the Six-text edition; but they can easily be used for other editions by observing the following notes.

1 As, for example, the text in vol. iv. of the Oxford edition in six volumes; Mr. Pollard's edition of the Canterbury Tales; the Student's Chaucer; and the Globe edition.
INTRODUCTION.

Group A occupies pp. 1-128; B, pp. 129-301; C, pp. 303-332; D, pp. 334-401; E, pp. 403-476; F, pp. 478-525; G, pp. 527-574; H, pp. 576-587; I, pp. 589-end. For practical use, we have only to reverse this arrangement, as under.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1-128 contains Group A.</th>
<th>478-525 contains Group F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>129-301</td>
<td>B. 527-574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303-332</td>
<td>C. 576-587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334-401</td>
<td>D. 589, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403-476</td>
<td>E.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few examples will make this plain.

Abailard, letters of, 353/677 = D 677.
Abigail, mentioned, 210/2290; 446/1369 = B 2290, E 1369.

Achelous, the river-god, 259/3296 = B 3296.

In the case of the Tale of Gamelyn (see p. 31), the references are to the separate paging in the Six-text. Thus "Boundys, Sir John of," refers to p. 1, following after p. 128 of the Six-text. At p. 101, the quotations in smaller type are from the same; thus "lokid as a wild lyon" is from Gamelyn, l. 125. The number of the page does not matter.

In conclusion, I beg leave to record my sincere regret that Professor Corson—of whom I entertain the most kindly recollections and whose loss I sincerely lament—did not live to see the issue of this most acceptable Index.
INDEX OF

PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS

TO

CHAUCER’S CANTERBURY TALES,

ELLESMERNE MS.

N.B.—The references are to the paging and lines of the Six-Text edition.

Aaron, brother of Moses; his abstinence, 390/1894
Abailard and Heloise, Letters of, alluded to, 353/677
Abelard. See Abailard
Abigail, the wife of Nabal, afterwards of David (1 Sam. xxv.); allusions to her saving her husband, 210/2290; 446/1369
Abraham, the patriarch; cited by Wife of Bath, in defense of polygamy, 335/55
Absalom (Absolon), son of King David, who rebelled against his father (2 Sam. xiii.—xix.), 641/639
Absolon, the parish clerk, in the Miller’s Tale, 95/3313; 96/3339, 3348, 3353; 97/3366, 3371, 3387, 3389, 3394, 3398; 105/3657, 3671; 106/3688, 3711, 3714, 3719, 3723; 107/3730, 3733, 3741, 3744, 3749; 108/3764, 3766, 3767, 3772, 3783, 3793; 109/3804; 110/3852
Absolon. See Absalom
Abstinence, remedy against gluttony; not meritorious if practised for health of body (St. Augustine quoted), 660/831, 832; its fellows, 1. temperance, 2. shame, 3. suffisance, that avoids rich meats and drinks, 4. measure or moderation, 5. sobriety, 6. sparing, not sitting long and comfortably at table, 660/833—835
Accidie, or Sloth, one of the seven deadly sins, 645—649/677—727; its remedy, 650, 651/728—738. See Idleness
Achelous (Acheloys), the river-god, with whom Hercules contendéd, 269/3296
Acheloys. See Achelous

ELLES. INDEX.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Achilles, the Greek hero, 136/198; 292/4338; 485/239
Achitofel. See Ahithophel
Actaeon, Diana’s punishment of, alluded to, 66/2303; his
metamorphosis portrayed on the walls of Diana’s temple
(Ovid’s Met., iii. 138), 59/2065—2068
Acts of the Apostles, 637/597
Actuum, gen. pl. See Acts of the Apostles
Adam, the first man, 211/2293; 295/4448; 485/239
Adam, the spencer, or butler, in the spurious tale
of Gamelyn, who aids Gamelyn against his elder brother
and his other foes, pp. 12 et seq.
Adonis (Adoon), the youth loved by Venus, 64/2224
Adriane. See Ariadne
Adromacha. See Andromache
Adultery, and the punishment of adulterers (Rev. xxi. 8,
quoted), 661/840, 841; defined, 664/874: the many sins it
includes, 664/875—884; set in decalogue between theft
and murder, as partaking of both sins, 665/887—889;
most heinous when committed by those in holy orders, 665/
891—894; may be between man and wife, 667/904—906;
copulation with kinsfolk, spiritual or fleshly, 667/907—
909
Æella, king of Northumberland (A.D. 560—588), 148/578;
149/604, 610; 150/659; 151/688, 691; 152/725; 157/876;
158/893, 897; 161/984, 988, 996, 1003; 162/1006, 1014,
1016, 1022, 1032; 163/1045, 1046, 1051; 164/1088; 165/
1100, 1128; 166/1141, 1144
Aemilia, name given to the provinces of Parma, Modena,
and the Romagna, in Italy, 404/51
Æneas, the Trojan hero, alluded to as “the false,” 130/64.
Æneid, Virgil’s epic poem; the slaying of Priam (lib. iii.
550—553), alluded to, 298/4549
Æsculapius, the god of Medicine, 13/429
Æsop, the fabulist, quoted against trusting an enemy,
216/2374
Africa (Affrike), one of the grand divisions of the earth,
291/4314
Age. See Old Age
Ahasuerus (of the Book of Esther), king of Persia, 210/
2291; 446/1374; 457/1745
Ahithophel, a counsellor of King David, who sided with
Absalom in his rebellion against the king, his father (2:
Sam. xv. 31 et seq.), 641/639
Alanus de Insulis (Alain de l'Isle), a Cistercian monk, 12th cent., and bp. of Auxerre. "the Universal Doctor;" proverb from his Parabolæ, "But every thyng which bat seineth as the gold, Nis nat gold," etc., 558/962,963

Alayn. See Aleyn

Albon, daun, name by which the host addresses the Monk 254/3120

Alcebiades. See Alcibiades

Alcestis. See Alcestis

Alcestis, wife of Admetus, king of Pherse, alluded to as a devoted wife, 131/75 ; 520/1442

Alchemy, its vain efforts and pretences, 550/666—683 ; 552—559/720—971

Alcibiades, the Athenian general; his wife's devotion alluded to, 520/1439—1441

Alcione. See Ceyx and Alcyone

Alcoran, the sacred book of the Mahometans, 140/332

Aleyne, the clerk or scholar, of Soler hall, Cambridge, in the Reeve's Tale, 115/4013 et seq.

Alfonce. See Pedro Alfonse

Alfonso. See Pedro Alfonso

Algarsif (Algarsyf), son of the Tartar king Cambyskan, in Squire's Tale, 479/30 ; 497/663

Algezir, city of, taken from the Moorish king of Granada in 1344, 2/57

Al-Hazem (Al-hazel or Alhazen), Arabian mathematician, physician, and astronomer, 11th cent., 485/232

Alisandre. See Alexandria

Alisaundre. See Alexandria and Alexander

Alisoun (or Alison), the Carpenter's wife, in the Miller's Tale, 97/3366; 101/3523; 102/3577; 104/3617, 3639, 3649; 105/3653, 3678; 106/3698; 108/3790

Alisoun, the name of the Wife of Bath, 356/804

Alisoun, a gossip of the Wife of Bath, 349/530; called dame Alys, 349/548

Alkaron, Alkoran. See Alcoran
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Alliterations, 1/9; 1/13; 3/69, 90; 4/103, 124, 135;
5/149, 154, 159, 167, 169, 170; 6/200; 7/217, 233; 8/273;
9/284, 309; 10/344; 11/365; 12/396, 399; 13/453;
14/459, 464, 471; 16/536, 539, 546; 17/573, 591; 18/603,
606; 20/705; 21/711, 735; 23/735, 792, 798; 24/831;
27/890, 893, 899, 908; 28/940; 31/1067; 36/1221; 38/1295;
39/1331; 41/1416; 48/1676; 49/1678; 55/1837; 56/1878,
1880; 55/1906, 7; 56/1935; 57/1977; 58/2002; 60/2079;
61/2116; 62/2154, 2164; 65/2309; 67/2333;
2334, 2335, 2338; 68/2386; 69/2419; 70/2437, 2463; 71/2494;
73/2550; 74/2603; 2605; 75/2607, 2608, 2609, 2610,
2611, 2612, 2613, 2615, 2616; 76/2649, 2654; 77/2691;
78/2735; 80/2804; 82/2860, 2865; 85/2990; 86/3019,
3025; 88/3095; 89/3109, 3122, 3125; 90/3141; 92/3202;
96/3308, 3317; 96/3342; 97/3393; 100/3472, 3484, 3488;
101/3512, 3517, 3521; 102/3545; 103/3587, 3609; 104/3618,
3619; 106/3703; 108/3796; 117/4090; 118/4101,
4107; 119/4163; 121/4232; 126/4355, 4356; 127/4369;
130/34, 62; 135/173; 142/388; 143/432; 144/445, 447,
468; 146/522, 525; 148/579, 592; 149/602; 150/640; 153/731;
154/761, 764, 787; 156/790, 818, 819; 156/830, 839;
157/873; 158/886; 159/932; 161/976, 985, 994; 162/1026,
1028; 163/1039; 165/1104, 1109; 166/1158; 170/1275;
1286; 171/1322; 173/1394; 176/1496; 177/1506; 186;
1774; 190/1896; 191/1902, 1911; 192/1932, 1944; 193;
2036, 2038, 2040, 2042, 2044; 198/2105, 2107; 200/2156;
254/3115, 3122, 3131; 257/3216; 268/3587; 273;
3724; 279/3913; 283/4016; 286/4119; 287/4159, 4163;
289/4253; 290/4288; 291/4299; 292/4332; 298/4554, 4562;
327/786; 335/32; 338/166, 168; 339/195; 340/209, 225,
229, 231; 341/249; 342/285; 346/450; 347/459; 348;
524; 349/536; 351/601; 352/672; 353/685, 686; 354;
736, 741; 355/774; 360/913, 918; 361/941; 364/1033;
367/1138; 368/1179; 369/1228, 1230; 370/1253; 375/1436;
380/1606, 1610; 381/1639; 385/1734, 1736; 386/1737,
1738; 394/2027; 395/2087; 396/2107; 404/28, 45; 405;
60, 81; 407/118; 409/187; 410/214; 412/276; 418/487;
419/504; 421/572, 574; 425/685; 428/781; 430/860; 434;
971; 441/1211; 442/1213, 1230; 444/1273, 1281, 1284,
1290; 446/1341; 447/1381; 448/1418, 1446; 453/1628;
454/1645; 456/1735; 460/1865; 463/1961; 464/2010;
466/2072, 2082; 467/2172; 468/2172; 476/2422; 478/6;
482/121, 136; 483/153, 168; 485/261; 487/323; 491/460;
498/697, 698; 502/796; 503/819, 821; 504/874; 508/985,
1006, 1010; 509/1031; 510/1064; 511/1106, 1116, 1121;
512/1163; 514/1228; 516/1305; 517/1344; 518/1484,
1360, 1361; 523/1541, 1552; 524/1590; 525/1600; 528/19;
538/321; 546/534; 561/1032; 567/1218, 1219;
humourously alluded to by the Parson: “I kan nat geeste
Rum, Ram, Ruf, by lettre,” 590/43

Almache. See Almachius

Almachius, the Roman prefect under whom St. Cecilia
suffered martyrdom, 540/362; 541/405, 410; 542/421, 431, 435; 543/468; 544/487; 545/524

Almagest, Ptolemy's Μεγάλη Σύνταξις τῆς Ἀστρονομίας, the handbook of astronomy in the Middle Ages, 92/3208; 339/183; 343/325

Alma Redemptoris Mater, name of a hymn to the Virgin, 184/1708; 186/1744; 187/1802; 188/1831, 1845

Alms, an essential of satisfaction; 3 kinds of: contrition of heart, pity for one's neighbour's defaults, giving good spiritual counsel and providing for the wants of the body, 679/1030—1033; should be done timely, and in secret if possible, 679/1034

Alyth, a star in the horns of Aries, 516/1281

Alocen. See Al-Hazem

Alphonse Astronom. tables, terms employed in, 516/1273
—93. See Tables Tolletanes

Alys, dame, the wife of Bath, 343/320. See Alisoun

Amazons, a race of female warriors, 26/880

Ambrose, Saint, one of the Latin Fathers of the Church (b. ab. 340, d. 397, A.D.), 580/1

Amphiaraus, a famous soothsayer and warrior, native of Argos, whose wife Eriphyle induced him to go to the Theban war where he lost his life, 354/741

Amphion, king of Thebes, renowned for his music, 45/1546; 456/1716; 580/116

Amphiourax. See Amphiaraus

Amphioun. See Amphion

Ancestors; "of our elders may we no thynge clayne but temporel thynge that man may hurte and mayme," 366/1131, 1132; "children ofte been vnlyk hir worthy elders hem bifore," 408/155

Andromache, wife of Hector; her dream of her husband's death, 292/4331—48

Angelus ad virginem, the title of a hymn in the Church service, 92/3216

Anger hinders wise counsel, 212/2313—18; treated of, as one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 631—653; its remedy, 643—654—76. See Ire

Anne, St., mother of the Virgin, 150/641; 380/1613; 529/70

Anselm, St., archbishop of Canterbury, b. 1033, d. 1109; 600/169, 170

Antaeus, a giant in Libya, slain by Hercules, 259/3298

Antecrist. See Antichrist.
Antheus. *See* Antæus
Anthiochus. *See* Antiochus
Anthony, St. *See* Antony
Antichrist, 655/788
Antiochus, king, violated the daughter of Apollonius of Tyre, 131/82
Antiochus IV., surnamed Epiphanes, king of Syria; the story of, in Monk’s Tale (from 2 Maccabees ix.), 274—276/3765—3820
Antonius, Marcus, slaughter of, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2032
Antony, or Anthony, St., fire of, 622/427
Apelles, a celebrated Greek painter, 303/16; 348/499
Apennines, a chain of mountains in Italy, “the hilles hye, That been the boundes of westlumbardy,” 404/45
Apennyn. *See* Apennines
Apia. *See* Via Appia
Apocalypse, the Revelation delivered to St. John, in Patmos, 597/156
Apollo, the sun, 497/671; 509/1031. *See* Phœbus
Apollonius of Tyre, 131/81
Appelles. *See* Apelles
Appollo. *See* Apollo
Apprentice of London, described, 127, 128/4365—4422
April, Aprill, Aprille, the fourth month, 1/1; 129/6; 349/546
Apulian. *See* Poilleys
Arabe, Arabia, a country of Asia, 482/110
Arabian, Arabyen, native of Arabia, 267/3529
Arch-deacon, description of a strict, 372/1301—1331
Arcite, the Theban prince in Knight’s Tale, the rival of his cousin Palamon, for the hand of Emilia, 30/1013, *et seq.*
Argus, the hundred-eyed keeper of Io, 41/1390; 344/358; 467/2111
Ariadne, daughter of Minos, forsaken by Theseus, 131/67
Aries, sign of the Zodiac, 480/51; 489/386; 516/1282. *See* Ram
Aristoclides, a tyrant of Orchomenus, 519/1387
Aristotle, the Grecian philosopher, 9/295; 485/233
Armed complaint. *See Insurrection
Armenian, a native of Armenia, 267/3528
Armorica (Armorik, Armorike), the ancient name of Bre-
tagne, in France, 268/3578; 500/729; Armorik Britayne, 510/1061

Arnauld de Villeneuve, celebrated alchemist and physician of 13th cent.; b. 1238, d. 1314; author of *Rosarium Philosophorum*, 572/1428

Arnold of the newe toun. See Arnauld de Villeneuve

Arpies. See Harpies

Arrius, a person mentioned by wife of Bath, 355/758, 762

Arrogance, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 619/396

Arson, the crime of, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, “The shepne brennynge with the blake smoke,” 58/2000

Artemisia, wife of Mausolus, king of Caria, to whom she erected the Mausoleum, 520/1451

Arthemesie. See Artemesia

Arthur (Arthour), king, the hero of British romance, 359/857, 882; 360/891; 365/1089

Arthures, gen. s. See Arthur

Artois (Artoys), a former province of France, 3/86

Arviragus (Arveragus), the knight in Franklin’s Tale, 503/808, 814, 837; 507/969; 510/1087; 518/1351; 520/1424; 521/1460; 522/1517; 523/1526; 1551; 524/1595

Ashes; in our ashen olde is fyre yreke (Petrarch, Son. 16), 111/3882

Asia, the continent east of Europe; used, probably, for Asia Minor, 183/1678

Assuer, Assuere, Assuerus. See Ahasuerus

Assurance, a remedy against Accidie, or Sloth, 650/735

Astrolabe (Astrelabie), an astronomical instrument, 92/3209

Astronomical and astrological allusions, 64/2217; 65/2271; 68/2367; 70/2462; 92/3193—5; 129/1—14; 284/4045—7; 293/4384, 5; 351/613—6; 353/695—705; 458/1795—7; 461/1887; 463/1968—70; 470/2222—4; 480/49—51; 486/263—5; 273, 4; 488/352; 497/671, 2; 510/1057, 8; 512/1129—31; 516/1245—8; 589/1—12; astrolog. influence, 136/194—203; invocation to the firmament, 139/295—308; astron. terms employed in the Alphonsine tables, 516/1273—91

Asye. See Asia

Atalanta, the huntress, portrayed on the wall of Diana’s temple (Ovid’s *Met.* x. 560), 59, 60/2069, 70

Atazir, a term under which the planet Mars is invoked (Spanish spelling of Arabic *attathir*, influence, employed in a bad sense; *Skeat*), 139/305
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Athens, city and republic of Greece, 26/861, 873; 29/963, 973; 30/1023; 35/1194; 41/1391, 1395, 1406, 1413; 60/2098; 71/2483; 77/2701; 84/2964; 85/2971; 518/1369

Attalia, city taken from the Turks by Pierre de Lusignan, soon after 1352, 2/58

Atthalante. See Atalanta

Atheneus. See Athens

Attheon. See Actaeon

Attila, king of the Huns, surnamed The Scourge of God; his death from drunkenness, 321/579

Attilla. See Attila

Auerh. See April

Auerrois. See Averroës

Augrim (contr. of Ar. algorithm, numeration), 92/3210

Augustine (Augustyn), St., Bp. of Hippo, the most eminent of the Latin fathers of the Church, 6/187, 188: 175/1449; 181/1631; 239/2807; 241/2833; 294/4431; 306/117; 504/97; 596/101; 508/150; 604/230; 608/269; 610/302; 617/368; 618/381, 383; 627/484; 632/535; 640/630; 645/678; 647/694; 661/741; 652/754; 653/768; 660/831; 668/921; 672/958; 674/985; 676/987; 682/535; 698/150; 640/6; 645/678; 647/694; 652/754; 653/768; 660/831; 668/921; 672/958; 674/985; 675/987; 678/1020, 1026

Aurelian, Roman Emperor (a.d. 270—275); capture of Queen Zenobia by, 267-8/3541—64

Aurelius (Aurelie), the squire in Franklin’s Tale, 506/938; 507/965; 970, 979, 982; 508/989, 1006, 1007, 1020; 509/1037; 511/1100, 1102: 513/1183, 1188; 514/1226, 1235; 515/1241, 1256; 516/1297, 1303; 522/1499, 1514; 523/1557; 524/1592

Austyn. See Augustine, St.

Auycen. See Avicenna

Avarice, or Covetousness, to be shunned, 239/2798; 330/905; one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 651—57/739—803; its remedy, 657, 58/804—17

Averroës, Averroës, or Averrhoes (originally Ibn-Roshd), an Arabian philosopher and physician, b. 1120, d. 1198, 13/433

Avicenna, Auycen (Latin form of Ibn-Sinâ), the most eminent of Arabian physicians, b. 980, d. 1037; 13/432; 330/889

Babiloigne. See Babylon

Babylon (Babilan), the Asiatic city and empire of antiquity, 261/3339; 395/2082; used adjectively, Babilian Tesbee, 130/63

Bacchus, the god of wine, 456/1722; 579/99

Backbiting (or detracción), 5 kinds of, 628/493—8
Bacus. See Bacchus
Baldeswelle (Bawdeswell), a parish in Eynford hundred, Norfolk, 18/620
Bale; “after bale cometh bote þorgh goddes might,” Gam. 18/631
Balthasar. See Belshazzar
Bailly, Harry, the Host of the Tabard, 126/4358. See Host of the Tabard
Barbarie. See Barbary
Barbary, the portion of the world outside of Greece, 520/1452
Barnabo Visconti, Duke of Milan. See Visconti
Basil, or Basilius, St., a Greek Father of the Church, bp. of Cæsarea, b. ab. 329, d. 379; quoted on the burnings of hell, 604/221
Basilie, St. See Basil
Bath (Bathe), a city of England, 13/445; 440/1170; 455/1685
Bayard (a horse’s name, from bay), the blynde, as bolde as is, a popular proverb, 572/1413
Becket, Thomas à, Archb. of Canterbury, b. 1109, d. 1170, alluded to as “The hooly blisful mastir,” 1/17; “The blisful mastir,” 22/770
Belial, “that is the deuel,” 666/897; “Belial is to seyn with-outen Iuge,” 666/898
Belmarye, a Moorish kingdom in Africa? 2/57; alluded to, as a country where lions are hunted, 75/2630
Belshazzar, king of Babylon, story of, in Monk’s Tale, 262—4/3373—3436
Benedict, Saint, the founder of monachism in the West, b. 480, d. 543, 6/173; 100/3483
Benedight, seint. See Benedict, St.
Benet, Beneyt, seint. See Benedict, St.
Bernard, Saint, abbot of Clairvaux, b. 1091, d. 1153, 528/30; 597/130; 609/166; 606/253, 256; 608/274; 646/690; 649/723
Bernardus Gordonius, prof. of medicine at Montpellier, 14th cent., 18/434
Bernardus Sylvesteris. See Megacosmus of B. S.
Berwick-on-Tweed, a sea-port town of England, 20/692
Berwyk. See Berwick-on-Tweed
Bethulia, the city which is the scene of the chief events of the Book of Judith, 210/2289; 274/3755
Betraying of counsel, the sin of, 642/645
Better late than never ("bet than neuere is late"), 572/1410; "bet is a pyk than a pykerel, and bet than olde boef is the tendre veel," 448/1419, 1420

Bevis, Sir, of Hampton (Southampton), romance of, alluded to, 197/2089

Bible, the sacred books of the Old and New Testaments, 18/1438; 321/578, 586; 352/650; 353/687; 389/1845; passages quoted or alluded to—

*Genesis* i. 28: 335/28; ii. 18: 211/224; iii. 1—7: 613/326—30; iv. 19: 335/54; ix. 25, 26: 662/755; xix. 33: 318/485—7; xxvii. 210/2288; 446/1363—5; xxx. 27: 623/443; xxxix. 5: 623/443; xxxix. 8: 664/880

*Exodus* xiv: 145/489, 90; xx. 3: 652/750; xx. 7: 323/642; 636/588; xx. 17: 661/844; xxxiv. 28: 390/1885

*Leviticus* x. 9: 390/1895; xix. 32: 326/744; xxi. 9: 660/838

*Deuteronomy* xxxii. 32? 602/195

* Judges* xi. 29—40: 309, 10/2404—4; xiii. 4: 320/555; xvi. 10—21: 354/721—3

1 *Samuel* ii. 12: 666/897; ii. 30? 601/189; xxv. 2—34: 446/1369—71; xxv. 2—35: 210/2290; xxviii. 7—25: 378/1510

2 *Samuel* xvii.: 641/639

1 *Kings* xi. 12: 472/2301; xix. 8: 390/1890

*Job* i. 21: 203/2190; 450/871, 2; ii. 6: 377/1490; x. 20—22: 600/176, 7; x. 22: 604/223; xii. 12: 214/2354; xiii. 6? 597/134

*Psalms* i. 1: 217/2388; iv. 5: 632/540; viii. 1, 2: 182/1643, 4; x. 9: 382/1657, 8; xxxii. 6: 611/309; xxxiv. 14: 243/2882, 3; xxxvii. 17: 240/2820, 21; xlix. 7, 8?: 648/716; lv. 15: 623/442; lxxvi. 5: 602/193; xxvii. 10: 611/307; evii. 34: 604/220; cxix. 113: 596/125; exxvii. 1: 223/2494; cxxxiii. 1—3: 245/2925

Ecclesiastes iii. 1: 403/6; v. 3: 642/649; vii. 28: 207/2247; 471/2247, 8; ix. 10: 645/679; x. 19: 236/2740

Song of Solomon ii. 10, 11: 468/2138—40

Isaiah xiv. 11? 602/198; xxxviii. 15: 597/135; 674/983; liii. 5: 609/281; lxvi. 24: 603/209

Jeremiah iv. 2: 323/635; 637/592; vi. 16: 593/77, 78

Ezekiel xviii. 26: 605/236; xx. 43: 698/141

Daniel ii. 596/126; vi. 16 et seq.: 144, 5/473—6: xiii.

(Conrad) 656/797

Jonah i. 12—17; ii. 1—10: 145/486, 7

Micah vii. 6: 602/201

Zechariah x. 5: 623/434

Tobit iv. 19: 211/2308; vi. 17: 667/906

Judith viii.—xiii.: 210/2289; xiii.: 159/939; xiii. 8: 446/1368


Story of Susanna: 150/639

1 Maccabees iii. 18, 19: 241, 2/2853—1


Mark vi. 37—44: 338/145, 6; vii. 9: 209/2265


John ii. 1—11: 334/11, 668/919; iv. 18: 334/17—19; viii. 3: 205/2223; 665/889; viii. 34: 598/142; xii. 35: 202/2177; xii. 4, 5: 629/502; xii. 6: 373/1351; xvi. 24: 648/705; xvii. 21? 642/643; xix. 17: 644/668; xix. 23: 644/665

Acts iv. 12: 609/287; viii. 18, 19: 655/783


1 Corinthians iii. 16? 632/544; iii. 17: 664/879; vi.
10: 639/619; vi. 18: 319/522, 3; vii. 3, 4: 670/940; vii. 6: 336/65; vii. 9: 335/52; x. 13: 382/1661; xi. 3: 669/922

2 Corinthians i. 12: 240/2824; iii. 6: 387/1794; iv. 17: 283/2700; vii. 10: 649/725; xi. 14: 376/1455; 666/895; xi. 23: 614/343

Galatians v. 17: 614/342; v. 19—21: 663/367

Ephesians iv. 5, 6: 534/267—290; iv. 26: 632/549; v. 4: 642/551; v. 5: 652/748; v. 18: 318/484; v. 18: 660/836 (Harl. MS.); v. 22—33: 338/160; v. 25, 28, 29: 447/438; v. 25: 661/843; 668/922; 669/929; v. 32: 668/918

Philippians iii. 18, 19: 320/530—33; 658, 9/820

Colossians iii. 12: 681/1054; iii. 18: 641/634

1 Timothy ii. 9: 343/341—5; iv. 7: 590/33, 34: v. 6: 320/547; vi. 8: 390/1881; vi. 10: 212/2320; 250/3030; 651/739

2 Timothy ii. 24: 640/630; iii. 16: 300/631, 2; iv. 7, 8: 541/386—390

James i. 4: 234/2707; 615/348; i. 5: 212/2309; i. 13: 439/1153; i. 22: 391/1937; ii. 13: 251/3059; ii. 17: 529/64

1 Peter ii. 21—23: 233/2692—2694; iii. 1—6: 669/930; v. 6: 675/988

2 Peter ii. 22: 597/138; iii. 9: 593/75

1 John i. 8: 615/349; i. 9: 252/3075—7; iii. 15: 634/565

Revelation ii. 5: 597/136; iii. 15: 634/565; iii. 16: 646/680; iii. 20: 609/289; vii. 1—3: 145/491—4; ix. 6: 603/216; xii. 9: 141/366; xiv. 4: 186/1773—1775; xxi. 8: 661/341

Bigamy, defended by the wife of Bath, 334/9 et. seq.

Biheste is dette, 130/41

Bilyea, cited as an example of wifly chastity (omitted in the other MSS.), 521/1455

Blank-Parson Link; the Manciple’s tale ended, the Host calls on the Parson for a “fable,” and the Parson replies, that he’ll get no fable from him, but “if that you list to heere moralitee and vertuous mateere, and thanne hat ye wol yene me audience, I wol fayn, at Cristes reverence, do yow plesaunce leeful as I kan;” 589—91/1—74

Blee, or Blean Forest, on the route of the Pilgrims close to Canterbury, 576/3

Blood, nature’s friend, 488/353

Boasting (Auauntynge), one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 619/393

Bob-up-and-down, supposed to be Harbledown, on the route of the Pilgrims to Canterbury, 576/2; but see J. M. Cowper’s letter to Athenæum, Dec. 26, 1868, p. 886, and Temporary Pref. to 6-T. ed. of C. T., p. 32
Boece. See Boethius

Boethius (Ancius Manlius Severinus), author of De Consolatione Philosophiae; alluded to or quoted, 34/1163—1166; 37/1262, 1263; 85, 86/2987—3016; 271/3677—3680; 367/1159—1161, 1168; 458/1792—1794; 495, 496/608—620; Chaucer's translation of, alluded to, 684/1088

Boughton vnder Blee. See Boughton, 547/556

Bologna, a city of Italy, 422/589; 425/686; 427/763; 433/939; 437/1069

Bologna. See Bologna and Boulogne

Bondys, Sir John of. See Boundys

Book of Fame. See House of Fame

Book of the Duchess, Chaucer's, alluded to, 684/1086

Book of the Leon, Chaucer's (now unknown), alluded to, 684/1087

Book of the .xxv. Ladies. See Legende of Goode Women

Book of Seint Valentynes day or the parlement of briddes. See Parlament of Foules

Bordeaux, a city of France, famous for its wines, 12/397; 321/571

Boughton-under-Blean, a town on the route of the Pilgrims near to Canterbury, 547/556

Boulogne, a seaport of France, on the English Channel, 14/465

Boundys (Bondys, Boundis, Boundes), Sir John of, the father of the three brothers in the spurious tale of Gamelyn, p. 1, following 6-T, 128

Bounty. See Goodness

Bradwardine (Bradwardyn), Thomas, called the Profound Doctor, Archb. of Canterbury, author of "De causâ Dei adversus Pelagium," 294/4432; probable allusion to, 300/4635

Bretagne, Brittany, in N. France, 12/409; 500/729; 508/992; 512/1159; 514/1221; 515/1240, 1268

Breton lays, sung to musical instruments, 500/712

Breton, adj. of Bretagne, 513/1179

Bretons, the early inhabitants of Brittany or Bretagne, in France, 500/709

Briseis, a patronymic of Hippodamia, taken captive by Achilles, 131/71

Britaigne. See Bretagne

Britain, England, 503/810

Britayne. See Bretagne

Briteyne. See Britain and Armorica
Briton, 513/179. See Breton of Bretagne
Briton, n. 147/561; adj. 151/666
Briton, adj. Breton, 500/711
Britons, natives of Britain, 147/545, 547; 359/858
Brixseyde (from accus. Briseida). See Briseis
Brok (badger), name of a grey horse, 378/1543
Bromholm, holy cross of, 123/4286
Bruges (Brugges), a city of Belgium, 169/1245, 1251; 175/1448; 176/1491; 191/1923
Brutus, Marcus Junius, one of the conspirators against Julius Cæsar, 278/3887, 3896; 520/1430
Brutus Cassius, spoken of as one person, 278/3887
Bordeaux. See Burdeux
Burnel, daun, the Asse. See Burnellus
Burnellus seu speculum Stultorum, of Nigellus Wireker, temp. Rich. I, alluded to, 296/4502
Busiris, king of Egypt, slain by Hercules, 259/3293
Busirus. See Busiris
Cacus, the giant slain by Hercules, 259/3297
Cadmus, founder of Thebes, 45/1546
Caesar, Caius Julius, the assassination of, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2031; death of, fore-written in the stars, 138/199; the triumph of, alluded to, 142/400; story of, in the Monk's tale, 277—9/3861—3916
Cain, the son of Adam and murderer of Abel, 677/1015
Callisto (Callisto, Callistopee), daughter of Lycaon, king of Arcadia, and companion of Diana, her metamorphosis portrayed on the wall of Diana's temple (Ovid's Fasti, ii. 153), 59/2056—60
Cambalo, or Cambalus, son of the Tartar king, Cambynskan, in the Squire's Tale, 479/31; 497/667
Cambalo, Canace's lover, in the Squire's Tale, who is to fight in the lists against her two brothers, to win her, 497/667
Cambridge, a university town of England, 113/3921; 115/3990
Cambynskan, the Tartar king in Squire's Tale, 479/12, 28; 480/42, 58; 485/266; 488/345; 497/661
Cambyses, king of Persia, a story of his cruelty, 394, 5/2043—72
Cana (Cane) of Galilee, 334/11
Canana, woman of (Matt. xv. 22—28), 529/59
Canana, son of Noah's son Ham, 653/766
Canace, the daughter of Aeolus, guilty of incest with her brother (Ovid. Her. 11), 131/78

Canace, daughter of the Tartar king, Cambynskan, in the Squire's Tale, 479/33; 482/144; 483/178; 485/247; 486/277; 489/361; 384; 490/410; 491/432, 449; 492/475; 485; 496/631, 633, 635, 638; 497/651, 669

Cananee, adj. Canaanite, 529/59. See Canaan, woman of

Cancer (Cancre), sign of the Zodiac, 461/1887; 470/2224

Cane. See Cana

Canon, description of the, who joins the Pilgrims at Boughton under Blean, 547, 8/556—86

Canon's Yeoman's Preamble. The Yeoman speaks of his seven years' hard and impoverishing experience with the Canon, and of the frauds practised by the latter in Alchemy; 552—59/720—971

Canon's Yeoman's Tale; a satire on the practice of Alchemy. A Canon pretends to teach a priest the mystery of the science, and makes him believe by his trickery that he converts quicksilver and copper into silver, and for the receipt obtains from him forty pounds. The Canon goes his way; and when the priest would make assay of this receipt, "farwel, it wolde nat be," 560/71/972—1481

Cantebregge. See Cambridge

Cantebrigge. See Cambridge

Canterbury, a city of England, 1/16, 22, 27; 22/769; 23/793, 801; 549/624; 576/3

Canterbury Tales, Chancer's, alluded to, 684/1086

Capanicus, one of the seven heroes who besieged Thebes, 28/932

Capella, Martianus Mineus Felix, author of De Nuptiis Mercurii et Phyllologice, 456/1732—1738

Capitolie. See Capitolium

Capitolium, the temple of Jupiter, in Rome, on the Mons Capitolinus, 278/3893, 95

Cappanecus. See Capanicus

Capricorn, sign of the Zodiac, 515/1248

Carpenter, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 11/361

Carpenter's wife, in the Miller's Tale, described, 93, 94/3233—70

Cartage, Cartagena in Spain (or Carthage?), 12/404. See Carthage

Carthage, city in Africa, 298/4555; 519/1400

Cassiodorus (Magnus Aurelius), a Latin historian, etc., b.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

ab. 468 A.D., quoted, 216/2386; 225/2538; 230/2628; 234/2718; 237/2754; 240/2832
Cassius, Caius, one of the assassins of Caesar, 278/3887.
See Brutus Cassius
Cato, Dionysius, name assigned to the author of a Latin work, entitled Dionysii Catonis Disticha de Moribus ad Filium (4th cent.), quoted, 93/3227; 215/2371; 218/2406; 223/2496; 232/2679; 238/2784; 239/2792; 286/4130; 287/4161, 4166; 446/1377; 550/688
Caton. See Cato
Catoun. See Cato
Caucasus, mountain range between Europe and Asia, 367/1140
Cauterbury, Cauturbury. See Canterbury
Caym. See Cain
Cecilia (Cecile, Cecilie), Saint, the patron saint of music; 528/28; 547/554; the story of, told by Second Nun, from the Golden Legend, 530—46/120—553; significations imputed to the name, 580, 31/85—119
Cecilies, gen. s. [St.] Cecilia's, 537/277. Evidently an error in the MSS. for Valerians, which Skeat substitutes
Cedasus, whose daughters slew themselves, to preserve their virginity, 520/1428
Cenobia. See Zenobia
Centauros, Lat. acc. pl.? See Centaurs
Centaurs, fabled monsters of anc. myth., half man and half horse, 259/3289
Centesimus fructus, 663/869
Cerberus, the three-headed dog of hell, 259/3292
Cesar. See Cesar, Caius Julius
Ceuta (anc. Septa or Septum), a fortified town on the N. coast of Africa, opposite Gibraltar, 160/947
Ceyx (Ceys) and Alegone, the story of, told by Chaucer in The Boke of the Duchesse, referred to by the Man of Law, 130/57
Chain of love, all things bound with the, 85/2987—93
Chaldea, anc. name of Babylonia, 261/3347
Chaldye. See Chaldaea
Chalons, coverlets (from Chalons in France?); a bed with sheetes and with chalons faire yspred, 119/4140
Chanon. See Canon
Chanticleer, name of the cock, in Nun’s Priest’s Tale, 283/4039, et seq.
Charles the Great (Charlemagne), 268/3577
Chaucer's Cant. Tales: Elles. MS.

Charming for wounds or maladies of men and beasts, 638/607. See Night-spell.

Chaste women, examples of, 518—21/1368—1456.

Chastity, Wife of Bath's opinion of, 338/138 et seq.; c. and continence, a remedy against lechery, 668/915, 916: 1. in marriage, 668—670/917—943; 2. in widowhood, 671/944—947; 3. in virginity, 671/948—950.

Chaucer, his metres and ryming, and previous works, spoken of by the Man of Law, 130/47—88; addressed and described by the Host, 190/1885—1896; his reply when interrupted in his Tale of Sir Thopas by the Host, 199/2116—2118, 2126—2138; 200/2139—2156; his advice to wives, in his Envoy to Patient Griselda, 440, 441/1177—1212; takes his leave, and asks pardon for, and grace to bewail, the sins committed in his books (which he enumerates), 684, 685/1081—1092.

Chauenteel. See Chanticleer.

Cheapside, a quarter of London, 22/754; 127/4377; 321/564, 569; 576/24.

Chepe. See Cheapside.

Chichiiache, i.e. lean cow; a fabled cow that fed upon patient wives, lean from the scarcity of her food, 441/1188.

Chiding and Reproach, "unsown the semes of freondshipe in mannes herte," spring from evil heart (Matt. xii. 34, Prov. xv. 4, St. Augustine, 2 Tim. ii. 24, Prov. xxvii. 15, xvii. 1, Coloss. iii. 18, quoted), 640, 641/622—634.

Chilón. See Stilbon.

Christ, the Saviour, 14/481; 15/527; 16/537; 20/698; 21/739; 98/3308; 89/3464; 100/3478, 3483, 3594; 101/3508; 106/3711, 3717; 108/3767, 3782; 117/4084; 122/4263; 125/4327, 4340; 132/106; 137/237: 138/258, 277; 283; 139/318; 144/450; 145/479, 501; 146/511; 147/538, 549, 561, 565, 567; 148/570, 574; 150/636; 151/686, 690, 693; 152/721; 154/760, 766; 155/811; 156/825; 158/902; 159/924; 160/950; 161/993; 163/1041; 165/1123; 166/1160; 183/1682, 1696; 184/1700, 1705, 1728; 185/1740, 1746; 186/1787, 1793; 187/1808; 188/1842, 1846; 199/2134; 202/2177; 205/2223, 209/2264, 2265; 222/2491; 223/2492; 228/2062; 229/2060, 2610; 233/2691; 305/81; 314/340; 319/501; 320/532; 321/593; 323/565, 652, 325; 709; 730/398, 916; 331/946; 334/10, 15; 337/107; 338/139, 146; 344/365; 347/469; 354/717; 368/1181; 370/1258, 1261; 373/1347; 379/1561; 380/1590; 381/1647; 382/1654, 1662; 386/1762; 388/1821; 389/1867, 1871; 390/1884, 1904; 391/1921, 1935, 1946, 1949; 392/1977; 447/1384; 468/2171; 540/383; 559/997; 561/1002; 563/1072; 564/1122; 573/1467; 593/79; 594/94; 595/1190; 606/115, 1124; 593/162; 603/208; 606/246, 255; 607/267, 269; 608/270, 272, 273, 275, 277; 609/282, 284, 285, 286, 287, 289; 612/314, 315; 616/358, 360; 618/382, 384.

ELLES. INDEX.
Christendom, Christian lands, 2/49; the Christian religion, 141/351, 378; 664/875, 876

Christian, n. a professor of the religion of Christ, 147/540; 637/595; 638/608

Christian, adj. professing, or relating to, the religion of Christ, 2/55; 136/222; 141/369, 380; 142/386; 143/416; 147/541, 547; 160/956; 164/1090; 183/1679, 1685, 1687; 187/1804; 637/595; 666/902, 903

Christianity, the religion of Christ, 147/544

Christmas, the festival in memory of the birth of Christ, 132/126; 184/1730

Christopher, Saint, an image of, worn as a brooch, 4/115

Chrysostom, St., a Greek Father of the Church, archb. of Constantinople, b. ab. 347, d. 407; 595/109

Church; hooly chirches good moot ben despeed on hooly chirches blood that is descended, 114/3983, 3984

Church pillage, the sin of, 653/767—9; c. pillagers, the devil's wolves (St. Augustine), 653/768

Cicero, Marcus Tullius, the Roman orator, quoted, etc., 214/2355; 215/2366, 2370; 216/2382; 217/2391; 225/2529, 2534, 2537; 226/2545, 2549, 2550; 227/2571, 2577, 2580, 2583; 238/2775; 239/2811; 251/3050; 287—91/4174—4294; 500/722

Cipion. See Scipio

Cipre. See Cyprus

Circe, the sorceress, 56/1944

Circes. See Circe

Cirus. See Cyrus

Cithaeron (Citheron), mount, sacred to Venus, 56/1936; 64/2223

Citherea. See Cytherea

Claudianus, Claudius, a Roman epic poet; his De Raptu Proserpinae alluded to, 470/2232

Claudius, Appius, the Roman Decemvir, rendered infamous
by his attempt to dishonor Virginia, 307/154; 308/178, 204; 309/227; 310/265, 267
Claudius, Marcus, the client and tool of Appius Claudius, the decemvir, who claimed Virginia as his slave, 307/153; 308/179; 310/267
Claudius II. (Marcus Aurelius Claudius), Emperor of Rome, A.D. 268—270, 267/3525
Clemency (Clemence), the goddess, 28/928
Clerk, or scholar, of Oxford, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 9/285—308
Clerk-Merchant Link; the merchant complains of his wife and brings her “passyng crueltee” into contrast with Griselda’s “grette pacience;” 442/1213—44
Clerk’s Head-Link; the Host addresses the Clerk and asks him for “som murie thyng of auentures,” and the Clerk replies that he will tell a tale he learned at Padua of a worthy clerk, Francis Petrarch, “the lauriat poete;” 403, 4/1—56
Clerk’s Tale of Patient Griselda, 405—41/57—1212
Clitermystra. See Clytæmnestra
Clytæmnestra, or Clytemnestra, wife of Agamemnon, her adultery and murder of her husband, alluded to, 354/737
Cock, description of a, 283, 4/4039—54
Coitü, De. See De Coitü
Cokkes, a corruption of Goddes, God’s; for Cokkes bones, 576/9; 590/29
Coldness, the sin of, that freezes all the heart of man, 649/722
Colle, name of a dog, 298/4573
Cologne (Coloigne), a city of Prussia, 14/466
Colossians (Colonienses), Epistle of St. Paul to the, 641/634
Comestor, Petrus, Biblical commentator of the 12th cent., author of Historia Scholastica; maxim (the latter ende of ioye is wo) from, 293/4395; his work alluded to as “the stories,” 318/488
Comparisons and Similes: 3/69, 81, 89, 92; 5/152, 170, 171; 6/198, 202, 205, 207; 7/238, 239; 8/257, 263, 268; 9/287; 10/332; 11/358; 16/552, 553, 556, 559; 17/590, 592; 18/605, 621, 626; 20/684, 688; 22/774; 31/1035—37; 34, 35/1177—80; 37/1261; 38/1301, 2; 40/1364; 44/1502; 46/1598; 47, 48/1637—46; 48/1656, 1657, 1658, 1659, 49; 49/1699, 1702; 50/1713; 52/1810; 61/2133; 62/2159, 2171, 2174; 63/2178; 70/2437; 72/2529; 78/2626—29, 2630—33; 81/2831—33; 99/3247—49; 94/3255, 56, 3257, 58, 3259, 60, 3261, 62, 3263, 64, 3266, 3282; 95/3310, 3314, 15, 3317, 3324; 97/3377; 99/3444, 45; 100/3472; 101/3518; 102/3576; 106/3704, 3706; 107/3731, 3759;
Concord, the power of, 242/2865—70

Concupiscence, "which yet is cleped norrisysynge of synne and occasion of synne," 614/337 et seq.; St. Paul quoted, his own temptation, 614, 15/345, 46; St. James the apostle, and St. John the Evangelist, quoted, 615/348, 49

Confession, the branches and leaves of the tree of penitence, 596/114; defined, 612/318—20; the 2d essential of penitence, 672/958; conditions of a true and profitable c., 674—6/982—1006; true shrift asketh certain conditions, 677, 8/1012—26

Constance, the heroine of the Man of Law's Tale, 134/151; 135/184; 136/208; 137/226, 241, 245, 249; 138/264, 274, 278; 130/319; 143/431, 438; 144/446; 146/536; 147/556; 148/570, 576, 583, 597; 149/608, 612; 150/631, 651; 151/679, 682, 684, 689, 693; 152/719; 155/797, 803, 817; 156/822; 158/900, 906, 908; 159/912, 924; 160/945, 953, 970; 161/978, 986; 162/1008, 1009, 1030, 1033; 163/1047; 165/1105, 1107, 1123, 1129; 166/1141, 1145, 1147

Constanzy, or stability of spirit, a remedy against Accidie, or Sloth, 650/737

Constantius Afer, a native of Carthage, a monk of Monte Cassino, and one of the founders of the School of Salerno (11th cent.), 13/433; his work, De Coitu, alluded to, 458; 1810
Constantyn. See Constantius Afer

Contestation, causeth often to do or say amiss, 502/783

Contention ("Contek with blody knyf and sharpenemance"), portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2003

Continence, Wife of Bath’s opinion of, 337/106 et seq.

Contra Jovinianum, a bitter diatribe by St. Jerome, against matrimony, alluded to, 353/675—681

Contrition of heart, an essential of Penitence, 595/108; the root of the tree of Penitence, 596/113; 4 things to be understood about c., 597/128; the 6 causes that ought to move a man to c., 597—609/133—291; must be universal and total, 610, 611/292—307; wherein availeth c., 611, 612/308—315

Contumacy, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/402

Cook, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 11, 12/379—387

Cook’s Prologue; the Cook expresses his joy at the Reeve’s Tale; cites Solomon, “Ne bryngynat every man in-to thy nhous, ff or herberwynge by nyghte-is perilous,” and offers to tell “a litel iape that fil in oure citee.” The Host accedes, but tells him to look that it be good, for that he has prepared many bad dishes, 125, 126/4325—4364

Cook’s Tale, of a riotous London apprentice, “cleped Perkyn Reuelour” (left unfinished), 127, 128/4365—4422

Copulation, permissible between man and wife for 3 causes, 1. begetting of children, 2. to pay, each to other, the debt of their bodies, 3. to avoid lechery, 670/939—942; unrestrained indulgence, deadly sin, 670/943

Cor meum eructavit, 391/1934

Corinth (Corynthe), an ancient city of Greece, 322/604

Counsel; “werk al by conseil and thou shalt nat rewre,” 101/3530; 203/2193: “good conseil wanteth wann it is moost nede,” 206/2238; the taking of, 211, 212/2305—2310; three obstacles to good counsel, “ire, coueitise, and hastifnesse,” 212/2311—2325; to be kept secret, 213/2329—2346; with whom it should be taken, 214, 215/2347—2361; the counsel of fools, flatterers, reconciled enemies, servants, drunkards, and young folk, to be eschewed, 215, 216/2362—2389; how counsel should be examined, after the teaching of Cicero, 217, 218/2390—2412; when and wherefore a man may change his counsel, 218, 219/2413—2421; Dame Prudence’s opinion of the several counsellors, good and bad, of Melibeus, 219/2431 et seq.; wicked counsel (as Alithophel’s to Absalom), its effect, 641/639—640; not to be taken of false or angry folk, 641/641

Counsellors, must be true, wise, and of old experience, 214, 215/2359; many c. sometimes necessary, 215/2360, 2361
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Courtesey (debonairetee), a remedy against Ire, 643/655; St. Jerome and the philosopher, quoted, 643/657, 8
Covetousness, the evils of, 212/2320—22; 250/3030; one of the Seven Deadly Sins. See Avarice
Creon, king of Thebes, 28/938, 961; 29/963, 986; 30/1002
Cresus. See Croesus
Crete, an island of the Mediterranean, 29/980; 354/733
Crisippus, an author in Jerome's Contra Jovinianum (the Stoic?), 353/677
Crisostom, Seint John. See Chrysostom, St.
Crist, Cristen, Criste, n. Cristiene, adj. Cristemasse, Cristendom. See Christ, Christian, Christmas, Christendom
Cristophere. See Christopher, Saint
Cristyanytee. See Christianity
Cresus, king of Lydia, proverbial for his riches; portrayed on the wall of the temple of Venus, 56/1946; story of, in Monk's Tale, 279, 80/391756
Cross of Christ, Constance's invocation to, 144/451—62
Crows, why they are all black and have harsh voices, 585/292—308
Cruelty joined to might, 271/3683, 84
Cuckoo, the bird of Jealousy, 56/1930
Cupid, god of Love, invoked, 47/1623, 24; described, 57/1963—66; the seintes legende of Cupide, 130/61
Cupide, Cupido. See Cupid
Cursing that comes of irons heart (simile of a bird returning to its nest), 639/619—21
Custance. See Constance
Cutberd, seint. See Cuthbert
Cuthbert, St., Bp, of Lindisfarne, 118/4127
Cyprus, island in the Mediterranean, 268/3581
Cyrus, the Great, king of Persia, 279/3918; 395/2079
Cytherea, an appellation of Venus, 64/2215

Dalida, 258/3253. See Delilah
Damascene (Damysene, 1, 2, 5; Damassene, 3; Damascene, 4; Damaseene, 6), the field of, where Adam was created, and where afterwards Damascus was supposed to stand, 256/3197
Damascenus (Damaseien), Johannes, an Arabian physician, 13/433
Damasie, Seint. See Damasus
Damasus I., St., bishop of Rome (366—384), quoted on simony, 655/788

Damned, the, 7 causes why they are without hope, 604/224 et seq.

Damocles, a parasite at the court of Dionysius the Elder; probable allusion to the story of, 58/2028—30

Damyan, the Squire in Merchant's Tale, in love with May, the wife of January, 457/1772; 458/1789; 460/1869, 1875; 461/1898, 1900; 462/1923, 1933, 1936; 463/1979; 464/2002, 2009, 2019; 466/2093, 2097; 467/2120; 468/2150, 2152; 469/2207; 470/2210; 473/2326, 2352; 474/2361; 475/2394

Damyssene. See Damascene

Dane, 59/2062—64. See Daphne

Daniel (Danyel), the Hebrew prophet, 144, 145/473—76; 261/3344—56; 263/3399; 291/4318; 596/126; 672/955

Dante Alighieri (Dant'), the Italian poet, 270/3651; 366/1126, 27; 378/1520

Dantes, gen. s. See Dante Alighieri

Daphne, her metamorphosis into a bay-tree, portrayed on the wall of Dian's temple (Ovid's Met. I. 450), 59/2062—64

Darius, the Great, king of Persia, 263/3427; 276/3838; allusion to his tomb, "which that Appelles wroghte subtilly," 348/498

Dartmouth, a seaport of England, in Devonshire, 12/389

David, king of Israel, the Psalmist, 159/935; 210/2290; 217/2338; 223/2493; 240/2820; 246/2925; 391/1033; 586/345; 596/125; 602/193, 204; 604/220; 611/307, 309; 623/442; 632/540; 648/716

Day of Judgment, dread of the, should move to contrition, 599/158165

Death, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, "the colde deeth with mouth gapyng vp right," 58/2008; death of Arcite, described, 80/2793—2814; "an ende of evry worldes soore," 81/2849; in the stars is written every man's death, 136/194—6; the face of one led to his death, described, 150/645—50; taketh of heigh and logh his rente, 166/1142; personified, 324/675—701; "manaceth euery age and smyt In ech estaat," 407/122, 3; when it comes, uncertain, 407/125, 6

Deceiver; "A gylour shal hym self bigyled be," 124/4321

December, the twelfth month, 515/1244

'De Civitate Dei,' St. Augustine's, 652/754

'De Coitu,' a medical work, by Constantius Afer (11th Cent.), 458/1811
Dei'anira, or Deianeira (Dejanira), wife of Hercules, 131/66; 260/3310; 354/725
Delights of the five senses, loss of the, in hell, 603/207
Delilah, the woman loved by Samson (Judges xvi.), 258/3253
Delphi, the seat of the celebrated oracle of Apollo, 510/1077
Delphos. See Delphi
Demetrius (perhaps Demetrius Nicator, king of Syria, who was defeated and taken prisoner by the Parthians, 138 B.C. Skeat), 322/621
Democionis daughter (Democionis Ariopagitarum principis virgo, Latin note), slew herself, to preserve her virginity, 520/1426
Demophon. See Demophoön
Demophoön, or Demophon, a king of Athens, son of Theseus and Phaedra, enamoured of Phyllis, 131/65
Denis (Denys), St., patron saint of France, 1st bp. of Paris, 172/1341. See St. Denis, a suburb of Paris
Denmark, a country of Europe, 357/824
Denys, Seint, suburb of Paris. See St. Denis
Deptford (Depeford), a town of England, on the Thames, 112/3906
Dertemouthe, 12/389. See Dartmouth
Desires of men; no one knoweth his own good, 37/1255—67
Despair of God's mercy. See Wanhope
Despite, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 619/395
Destiny, characterized, 48/1663—72; may not be eschewed, 297/4528
Devil. See Satan
Deysscorides. See Dioscorides
Diana, goddess of chastity, hunting, etc., 49/1682; 55/1912; 65/2274; 519/1390; paintings on the walls of her temple, 59, 60/2054—88; Emily's sacrifice and invocation to, in Knight's Tale, 65—8/2171—2366
Diane. See Dei'anira
Dianira, Dianyre. See Dei'anira
Dido, queen of Carthage, 130/64
Dioscorides Pedanius, a Greek botanist, born at Anazarba, in Cilicia, lived between 50 and 200 A.D., 13/430
Discipline, an essential of bodily penance, in what it consists, 681/1052—6
Discord, fatal to riches, 242/2867; the sin of sowing and making d., 641, 2/642, 3
Disobedience, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 619/392
Dispositions, different influences of the planets Mercury and Venus upon, 353/697—705
Dives, the rich man of the Parable (Luke xvi. 19), "Lazar and dues lyueden diuersly," 389/1877
Divinations, forbidden of God, 638/605, 6
Doctor of Physic, description of, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 12, 13/411—44
Doctor-Pardoner Link; the Host comments feelingly on the Doctor's Tale and then calls on the Pardoner to tell "som myrthe or Iapes right anon," 312, 13/287—328
Doctor's Tale, of Virginius and his daughter Virginia, 303—11/1—286
Donegild, mother of Ælla, king of Northumberland, in Man of Law's Tale, 152/695; 153/740; 154/778; 155/805; 158/896
Dorigene, or Dorigen, wife of Arveragus, in Franklin's Tale, 503/815; 506/619, 926, 936; 510/1090; 521/1457, 1469, 1488; 522/1500; 523/1542, 1551; 525/1593
Double tongue, the sin of, 642/644
Douere. See Dover
Dover, a seaport town in Kent, England, 125/4347. See Jack of Dover
Dreams, subject of, discussed by the cock and the hen, in Nun's Priest's Tale, 285—92/4111—4346; stories of, 287—91/4174—4294
Drunkards, the counsel of, to be eschewed, 216/2383, 2384
Drunkenness, the vices of; "Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route, Ther is no conseil hyd with outen doute," 154/776, 777; examples of the evil effects of d. and gluttony, 318—21/485—588; story of Cambyses' cruelty from d., 394, 5/2043—78; the horrible sepulture of man's reason, 669/822—4
Du Guesclin, Bertrand (1314—1380), a great French general, and constable of France; covertly alluded to, through a description of his arms, 268/3573—75
Dun is in the myre, 576/5
Dunmow (in Essex) bacon, a reward of concord in marriage, 340/217, 8
Dunstan, St., Archb. of Canterbury (b. 925, d. 988), 377/1502
Dyane. See Diana

Each man for himself, 35/1182
Earnest; "men shall not make earnest of game," 91/3186
Easter, the Church festival in memory of the Resurrection, 633/552
Ebrayk. See Hebrew
Echo, a nymph in love with Narcissus (Ovid, Met. 3, fab. 5), 507/951
Ector. See Hector
Edward, St., the Confessor, 255/3160
Egeus, father of Theseus, in Knight's Tale, 81/2838; 83/2905
Egipcien, Egypcien; Egypte. See Egyptian, Egypt
Eglentyne (4, 5, 6, Englentyne), Madame, name of the Prioress of the Canterbury Pilgrims, 4/121
Egypcien Marie. See Mary, St., the Egyptian
Egypt, a country in Africa, 291/4323
Egyptian, adj. of Egypt, 145/500; n. native of Egypt, 267/3528
Ekko. See Echo
Elation, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/400
Eleyne, seint, mother of Constantine the Great, 331/951. See Helena
Eleyne, wife of Menelaus. See Helen
Elf-queen, queen of the elves or fairies, 359/860
Eliachim (A. V., Joacim), the high-priest in Jerusalem, in the time of Judith (Judith iv. 6, 14), 274/3756
Elijah (Elye), the Tishbite, his fasting, 390/1890
Elisha (Elise), the Hebrew prophet; friars have been since, 396/2116
Elpheta, wife of the Tartar king Cambyskan, 479/29
Elves, fairies, supplanted by limitours and other holy friars, 359/857—864
Elye. See Elijah, the Tishbite
Emeleward, towards Æmilia, 404/51. Skeat explains "towards the Æmilian way." See Æmilia
Emelye, sister of Hippolyta, wife of Theseus, in the Knight's Tale, loved by Palamon and Arcite, 26/871; 29/972; 31/1035; et seq.
Emetreus (2, 6, Emetius), king of Ind, in the train of Arcite, described, 62, 3/2155—86; 75/2638; 76/2645
Empty hand; "With empty hand men may none haukes tulle," 119/4134; 345/415
End; "Som tyme an ende ther is of euery dede," 75/2636
Endor. See Witch of Endor, 378/1510
Enee.  *See Æneas*, 130/64
Enemies, the counsel of reconciled, to be eschewed, 215, 216/2372—2379
Eneydos, gen. sing.  *See Æneid*, 298/4549
England (EngelonU), 1/16; 17/580; 61/2113; 165/1130; 331/921; 372/1322; 373/1340; 503/810; 570/1356
Englentyne, Madame.  *See Eglentyne*
English (Englissh), (E. language), 130/49; 154/778; 480/37; 527/2
Ennok.  *See Enoch*
Enoch, the patriarch, friars have been since, 396/2116
Envy, St. Augustine's description of, 306/115; 16; one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 627—30/484—514; its remedy, 630, 31/515—31
Ephesians, Epistle of St. Paul to the, 652/742, 748
Ephesios, ad.  *See Ephesians*
Epicurus, the Greek philosopher, 10/336
Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum, de non ducenda uxore (by Walter Mapes?) alluded to, 352/671
Ercules.  *See Hercules*
Eriphyle (Eriphilem), wife of Amphiaraus, whom she betrayed, 354/744
Ermyn, an Armenian, 267/3528
Ernest of game.  *See Earnest*
Eros, the god of love, 40/1374
Erro.  *See Hero*
Erymanthian boar, slain by Hercules, 259/3299
Escurapius.  *See Æsculapius*
Essex, a county in the east of England, 340/218
Esther (Ester), the Jewish queen of Ahasuerus, and cousin and ward of Mordecai, 210/2291; 446/1371; 457/1744
Ethiopian (Ethiopeen), a native of Ethiopia, 615/345
Euclid (Euclidean), the famous Greek geometrician, 401/2289
Europe, one of the grand divisions of the earth, 134/161
Eva.  *See Eve*
Evangelist (Euaungelist), a writer of one of the four Gospels, 199/2133
Evangiles (Euaungiles), Gospels, 151/666
Eve (Eua, Eva), the wife of Adam, 141/368; 354/715; 445/1329; 529/62; 612/325; 613/331, 332; 630/516; 658/819
Evil-doer must not expect good, 124/4320
Extortions from underlings, to be condemned, 653/764
Exodus, the Book of, 652/750
Ezechias, or Hezekiah, king (Isa. xxxviii.), 674/983
Ezechiel (Ezechie), for Ezechias, or Hezekiah (Isa. xxxviii.), 674/983
Ezekiel, the Hebrew prophet, 597/135; 598/140, 143; 605/236

Face of one led to his death, described, 150/645—50
Fairies, the land full of, in days of Arthur, 359/857—72
Faith and hope in God and His saints, a remedy against Accidie or Sloth, 650/734
Falcon, the love-lorn bird in the Squire’s Tale, whose language Canacee understands by virtue of the magic ring; described, 490, 491/409—431; her love-story, 492—496/499—631
False oaths come of Avarice, 656/795
False witness comes of Avarice, 656/795; in what it consists, 656/796, 797
Fame, House of, 684/1086. See House of Fame
Family foe, the dangers of the, 458/1783—1787; “wel oghte a man anysed for to be whom that he broghte in-to his pryuetee,” 125/4333, 4334
Fashion, no new, that is not old, 61/2125
Fasting, the necessity and merit of, 389, 390/1879—1916; its efficacy (St. Jerome quoted), 680/1047; consists in 3 things: forbearing 1. meat and drink, 2. worldly jollity, 3. deadly sin, 681/1049; ordained by God, 681/1050; 4 strings appertain to f., liberality to the poor, spiritual gladness of heart, not grudging at fasting, seasonable and moderate eating, 681/1050, 1051
Fate, may not be escaped, 297/4528
Fathers and mothers, advice to, on their responsibility, 305, 306/93—102
Faucon. See Falcon
Feeble trees; “of fieble trees ther comen wrecced ympes,” 254/3146
Feeld hath eyen and the wode hath eres, 44/1522
Felony, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 57/1995, 1996
Ferrara (Ferrare), a city of Italy, on the Po, 404/51
Finisterre, cape of, a promontory at N. W. extremity of Spain, 12/408
First to mille, who so comth, first grynt (first come, first served), 345/389
Fish, a sign of the Zodiac, 486/273
Fish street, in the City of London, close to the Thames, 321/564
Five senses, loss of the delights of the, in hell, 603/207 et seq.
Flanders, a country of Europe, 3/86; 173/1389; 174/1429; 176/1490; 191/1909; 318/463
Flatterers, the counsel of, to be eschewed, 215/2365; Cicero, Solomon, and Cato, quoted, 215/2366—71; the devil's nurses, his enchanters, and chaplains, 639/613, 615—17
Flattery, beware of, 297/4515—20; the evil consequences of listening to, 297—300/4521—4627; the vice of (Solomon quoted), 639/612—18
Flaundres. See Flanders
Fleming, a native of Flanders, 126/4357; 299/4586; 587/349
Florence, a city of Italy, 366/1125
Fools, the counsel of, to be avoided, 215/2363
Forbearance (Suffrance), a remedy against Ire, 643/656
Force; leueful is, with force force of showue (vim vi repellere), 112/3912
Foreknowledge of God, the vexed question as to the, 294, 295/4424—41
Forest, description of a, painted on the wall of the temple of Mars, 57/197580
Forgiveness, who is worthy to have, 247/2963—5
Fortitude, a remedy against Accidie or Sloth, 650/728—37
Fortune, the goddess, 27/925; 32/1086; 36/1238—42; 37/1253, 54; 250, 231/2640—45; 256/3185, 86; 260/3326—32; 264/3431—35; 268/3587, 88; 270/3635; 272/3709—16; 273/3740; 273/3746—48; 276/3833; 277/3851; 279/3912—16; 280/3953—56; 299/4593, 94; 312/295—300; 465/2057—64; 518/1355—67
Fox, description of a, 285/4089—95
France, a country of Europe, 171/1306; 172/1341
Franklin, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 10, 11/331—60; never learned rhetoric, 500/719; nor slept on Parnassus, 500/721; nor learned Cicero, 500/722
Franklin's Tale, of Arveragus, and his wife Dorigene, "that loueth hire housbonde as hire hertes lyf," 500—525/729—1624
Free will, the vexed question of, 294, 5/4424—41
Friar, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims,
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

7, 8/208—69: a skirmish of words between him and the Summoner, 357/829—49; "a flye and eek a frere Wol falle in every dyssh and mateere," 357/835, 6; "ffreres and feendes been but lyte a-sonder," 383/1674

Friar-Summoner Link; the Summoner vents his rage against the Friar for the latter's derogatory story of a Summoner and the Devil, 383, 4/1665—1708

Friar's Prologue; the Friar vilifies Summoners; the Summoner threatens to pay him back when his turn comes to tell a story; the Host bids the Friar tell forth his tale, 371/1265—1300

Friar's Tale, of a Summoner and the Devil, 372—382/1301—1664

Friday, alluded to as an unlucky day, 45/1534—1539; 297/4531, 4541, 4542

Frideswide (or Fredeswyde?), St., a Saxon, patroness of a Priory at Oxford, 99/3449

Friends, grief for the loss of, should be moderate, 202/2182; the value of true friends as counsellors, 214, 215/2347—2361; should obey each other, 601/762, 763; loss of, in hell, 602, 608/199206

"Fruyt (the) of euery tale is for to seye," 152/706

Frydeswyde. See Frideswide

Funeral of Arcite, described, 81/2853 et seq.; funeral pile, and burning of Arcite's body, described, 83/2913 et seq.

Future, the, uncertain; "A man woot litel what hym shal bityde," 99/3450

Fyshstrete. See Fish Street, 321/564

Galatea (Galathee), mistress of Pamphilus, in a Med. Latin poem of the latter name, 511/1110

Galen (Claudius Galienus), a celebrated physician of antiquity, b. 130 A.D., 13/431; 660/831. See Galiones

Galgopheye (4, Galgopheie; 5, Galgopleye; 6, Golgopheie), the vale of, allusion uncertain; Morris supposes the vale of Gargaphie (Ovid's Met. iii. 155, 156), 75/2626

Galicia (Galice, a province of Spain), the shrine of St. James at Compostella, in, 14/446

Galien. See Gallienus and Galen

Galilee, Cana of, 334/111

Galiones, medicinal potions (?) named from Galen, the ancient physician, 312/306

Gallienus, Emperor of Rome, 260—268 A.D., 267/3526

Gallus, Caius, or Cnæus Sulpitius, Roman consul, B.C. 166; his repudiation of his wife alluded to, 352/643—6

Galyen. See Galen

Gambling. See Hazardry
Game; "men shal nat maken ernest of game," 91/3186; "a man may seye ful sooth in game and pleye," 126/4355

Gamelyn, the spurious Tale of (App. to Group A. of the Tales), pp. 1—26, following 6-T. p. 128; relates how Gamelyn, the youngest of three sons of a doughty knight, Sir John of Boundys, after having become chief of the outlaws, avenges the wrongs done him by his eldest brother, who had deprived him of his patrimony and, until he grew to man's estate, kept him in servile dependence; and how Gamelyn, in the end, is made by the king chief justice of his free forest, and weds a wife good and fair.

Garden, a, described, 465/2029—41; 505, 6/902—17

Garland, name of a dog, in the Nun's Priest's Tale, 298/4573

Gatesden, John, a physician of Oxford (14th cent.), 13/434

Gaufred. See Geoffrey de Vinsauf

Gaul, anc. name of France, 519/1411

Gawain (Gawayn), Sir, a knight of the Round Table, noted for his courtesy, 481/95

Gawle. See Gaul

Gaza, one of the cities of the Philistines, 258/3237

Gazan, from Gazam, Lat. accus. See Gaza

Gemini, sign of the Zodiac, 470/2223

Genelon, the Breton Knight who betrayed to their death, the great Roland and Charlemagne's paladins, to the Moors at Roncesvalles; the name used as an epithet synonymous with traitorous, "Genyloyn Olyuer," 268/3579; apostrophised as type of treachery, 294/4417; his punishment alluded to, 173/1384

"Gentil herte is fulfild of pitee," 150/660; "pitee renneth soone in gentil herte," 51/1761; 463/1986; 492/479; "he is gentil that dooth gentil dedis," 367/1170

Gentleman, the true, defined, 366/1113—16

Gentleness, true, in what consists, 366—8/1109—76; general signs of (Seneca quoted), 625/464—9; a remedy against Ire, 643/654

Genylon. See Genelon

Geoffrey de Vinsauf's De Poetria Nova, passage in, bewailing the death of Richard I., alluded to, 297/4537—42

Gerland. See Garland

Gernade. See Granada

Gerounde. See Gironde

Geruays (3, Ieruys; 4, 6, Geruays; 5, Gervase), name of the smith in the Miller's Tale, 108/3761, 3765, 3775; 3779

Ges'a Romanorum, one of the oldest mediæval collections
of pious legends, etc.; alluded to as "the Romayn geestes," 472/2284; "the olde Romane geestes," 165/1126. The latter may have a general reference to Roman histories.

Ghent, a city of Belgium, noted for its cloth-making, 13/448

Gibraltar, the southernmost promontory of Spain, 160/947; Strait of. See Marrok

Gifts of fortune or of nature, cause of death to many, 312/295—300; "euerich hath of God a prope yifte," 337/103

Gilbertus Anglicus, a physician of the 13th cent., author of Practica et Compendium Medicinae, 13/434

Gilbertyn. See Gilbertus Anglicus

Gile, Giles (Lat., Ägidius), St., b. in Athens, 6th cent., d. in France, 721; oath by, 566/1185

Gile, the Carpenter's maid, in the Miller's Tale, 102/3556

Gironde, a river in France, 514/1222

Gladness, preserves freshness in age, 203/2185

Gluttony, kindles the fire of lechery, 318/481, 482; full of cursedness, 319/498; one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 658, 669/818—830; its remedy, 660/831—835

God, the supreme being, 16/533; 17/573; 26/886; 32/1084; 33/1127; 37/1252, 1282; 38/1317; 44/1520; 46/1599; 48/1665; 52/1800; 1810; 54/1863; 60/2104; 75/2558, 2563; 79/2782; 87/3064; 88/3099, 3108; 89/3132, 90/3165, 3172; 94/3281; 95/3325; 97/3369; 98/3427; 99/3454; 100/3491; 103/3588, 3592, 3595; 106/3709; 108/3769, 3792; 110/3838, 3854; 112/3918; 116/4026, 4036; 117/4073, 4086, 4089; 118/4118; 122/4247, 4252; 124/4322; 125/4335, 4339; 129/18; 134/156, 160; 136/169; 136/195; 137/245; 140/334; 143/439; 145/476, 477, 504; 146/523; 149/602; 150/639; 153/733; 154/782; 155/813; 157/872, 873; 158/907; 159/914, 938, 942; 160/943; 162/1019, 1023; 163/1060; 166/1146, 1155; 171/1305, 1325; 172/1338, 1356, 1360; 178/1583, 1398; 174/1416; 175/1449, 1454, 1464; 176/1476; 177/1535; 178/1545, 1570; 1573, 1575; 179/1583, 1596, 1611, 1614; 180/1623; 181/1628; 186/1676; 187/1797; 189/1873, 1878; 195/2021; 197/2098; 199/2109, 2112, 2119, 2126; 202/2172; 204/2205; 207/2248; 209/2270; 210/2280, 2291; 219/2427; 228/2586, 2399; 230/2636; 233/2685; 234/2700; 240/2818, 2819; 241/2847, 2851; 242/2853, 2870; 244/2909; 246/2954; 251/3063; 252/3073, 3075; 254/3122, 3133, 3140; 255/3152; 256/3198; 257/3207, 3231, 3236; 261/3358; 262/3367, 3369, 3372; 263/3400, 3409, 3490, 3411, 3415, 3421; 269/3590; 272/3712, 3715; 274/3778, 3780; 275/3789, 3799, 3805, 3812; 281/3978; 283/4018; 286/4084, 4086; 4099, 4107, 4112; 287/4164; 289/4240, 4244; 291/4287; 291/4310; 292/4349; 295/4378; 295/4424; 299/4438; 296/4485; 299/4598, 4615; 300/4622, 4634; 310/2424, 250; 311/278; 312/304; 319/523; 321/576; 323/633, 640, 647,
ELLES. MS. 33

(God, continued)
Gold; "if gold ruste, what shal i ren do?" 15/500;
"ever thyng which pat seeineth as the gold nis nat gold," 558/962, 963
Goldless for to be it is no game, 176/1480
Goliath. See Goliath
Goliath, the Philistine giant, 159/934
Good name, the value of a., 240, 241/2827—2837; 250/3033—3036
Good or harm not to be hastily requited, 207/2243
Goodness, comes all from God, not from birth, 408/157
Gothland, or Gottland (Gootlondf), the southernmost province of Sweden; also an island in the Baltic, 12/408
Grace, Accidie or Sloth an enemy to, 646/684
Granada, a Moorish kingdom in Spain, 2/56
Great Sea, the part of the Mediterranean on which Palestine borders (Num. xxxiv. 6, 7; Josh. i. 4), 2/59
Great things, done not by strength nor agility, but by good counsel, by authority, etc. (Cicero), 214/2355
Greece (Greece), a country of south-eastern Europe, 29/962; 277/3847; 520/1444; 144/464
Greece, Sea of. See Sea of Greece
Greek, native of Greece; the Grekes hors Synon, i. e. the horse of Sinon the Greek, 484/209
Greeks, people of Greece, 83/2899; 84/2951, 9; 85/2969; 354/744
Greenwich, a town in Kent, England, on the Thames, 112/3907
Gregorie, Gregory I., Pope, a saint and doctor of the Church, b. ab. 540, d. 604, 233/2687; 594/92; 603/214; 605/235; 621/414; 626/470; 647/692; 669/828; 670/934; 682/1069
Grekes. See Greek and Greeks
Grenewych. See Greenwich
Grete See (the). See Great Sea, 2/59
Grief, excessive, does not become a wise man, 202/2171;
moderation should be observed in g., for the loss of a friend, 202/2182
Grievances, 4 kinds of (wicked words, damage or loss of property, harm of body, excessive labour), and their remedies, 643, 4/662—9
Griselda (Grislil, Grisilde, Grisildis), the Patient, the subject of Clerk’s Tale, 410/232; 411/255; 412/274, 297; 413/
Grudging or murmuring, against God and man, 628, 9/499—501; from avarice (Judas Iscariot cited as example), 629/502; among servants, 629/506—8; from ire or privy hate, 629/509

Guilty man, the, suspicious, 550/688, 689

Guy (Gy), Sir, of Warwick, Romance of, alluded to, 197/2089

Gysen (called Gyndes in Seneca and Herodotus), a river destroyed by Cyrus because his horse was drowned therein, 395/2079—81

Haberdasher, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 11/361

Habradate, the devotion to death, of his wife, alluded to, 519, 20/1414—18

Hailes, the abbey of, in Gloucestershire; an oath “by the blood of Crist that is in Hayles,” 323/652

Haly, an Arabian astronomer, and a commentator on Galen (11th cent.), 13/431

Hanged on the gallows, who is worthy to be, 352/655—658

Hannibal (Hanybal), the Carthaginian general, 139/290

Harpies, fabulous monsters, with the faces of women and the bodies of birds; slain by Hercules, 259/3290

Hasdrubal, the Carthaginian general in command during the siege of Carthage by the Romans; the story of his wife alluded to, 298/4553—8; 519/1399—1404

Haste; “he hasteth wel that wisely kan abyde, and in wikked haste is no profit,” 207/2244

Hastiness, to be avoided, 212/2323—25

Hasty judgment followed by hasty repentance, 205/2220; 212/2325; “of an hastif thyng men may nat preche or maken tariyng,” 102/3545, 3546

Hayles. See Hailes

Hazardry (playing at games of chance), condemned, 321, 322/590—602; sin of, 656/793, 4

Heads and wits; “as many heddes as manye wittes ther ben,” 484/203

Heaven, given to them that labour, and not to idle folk, 648/716
Hebraic (Hebrayk), Hebrew, 185/1750
Hebrew people, their passage through the Red Sea, alluded to, 145/489, 90
Hector, the Trojan hero, 81/2832; 136/198; 292/4331
Helen, wife of Menelaus, ravished by Paris, 131/70; 457/1754
Helena, Saint, mother of Constantine the Great; oath "by the croys which pat seint Eleyne fond," 331/951
Helie. See Belial
Hell, the land of darkness, of missease, why Job so calleth it, 601/181—188
Héloïse (Helowys), mistress of Abailard, alluded to, 353/677
Herald's proclamation of the rules of the tournament, 73/2537—60
Hercules, the hero of antiquity, proverbial for his strength, 56/1943; 136/200; 354/725; the story of, in Monk's Tale, 259, 60/3285—3332
Hereos. See Eros
Hermanno, son of queen Zenobia, 267/3535 (In Boccaccio the name is Heremianus)
Hermengyld, the wife of the Constable that receives Constance in Northumberland (It is the Saxon Eormengild, which was the name of one of the daughters of Earконbehrt, King of Kent, Wright), 146/533, 35; 147/539, 62; 148/595, 97; 149/600, 625, 627
Hermes; Hermes Trismegistus ("thrice-great Hermes"), the Egyptian Thoth, regarded as inventor of all science and learning, 573/1434
Hermione (Hermyon), daughter of Menelaüs and Helen, 131/66
Hero, the mistress of Leander, 131/69
Herod Antipas, the tetrarch, son of Herod the Great, commanded to slay John the Baptist, 318/488—491
Herod, the part of, in religious plays: "He pleyeth Herodes vp on a Scaffold bye," 97/3384
Herodes, pl. Herods; the Jews addressed in Prioress's Tale, "O Herodes al newe!" 186/1764
Hester. See Esther
Hethenesse, Heathen lands, Heathendom, 2/49
Hieronymus. See Jerome, St.
Hippocras, a spiced cordial, named from Hippocrates, 312/306; 458/1807
Hippocrates, the celebrated Greek physician (b. 460 B.C.), 13/431
Hippolyta, queen of the Amazons, and wife of Theseus, in the Knight's Tale, 26/868, 881; 29/971; 49/1685; 74/2578
Hodge (Hogge of Ware), dim. of Roger, name of the Cook with the Canterbury Pilgrims, 125/4336. See Roger
Holderness, a district on the coast of Yorkshire, 385/1710
Holofernes, a general of Nebuchadnezzar, slain by the Jewish heroine Judith, during the siege of Bethulia, 159/940; 210/2289; 446/1368; story of, in Monk's Tale, 273, 4/3741—64
Homer, the Greek poet, 520/1443
Hope, seven causes why the damned are without, 604/224 et seg.
Horeb, Mount, one of the sacred mountains, 390/1891
Horn child, Romance of, alluded to, 197/2088
Horse of brass, in Squire's Tale, described, 487, 488/303—334
Host or the Tabard Inn, 22/751—757; 181/1625—1641; 190/1885—96; 199/2109—2115; 2119—2125; 253, 254/3081—3113; 254, 55/3114—3154; 281/3970—3984; 282/3985—95; 4000—5; 312, 13/287319; 319; 381/946—55; 332/958, 9; 358/830—53; 371/1286—89, 1298—1300; 373/1334, 37; 386/1762, 63; 403/1—20; 442/1240—42; 476/2419—40; 478/1—3; 498/695—698; 548/594—98; 615, 616; 549/628—39; 652, 653; 550/654—6; 663, 664; 551/697, 698; 576/6—19; 577/57—60; 578/61—75, 94—96; 579/97—103; 589, 590/15—29; 591/67—74
House; "with-inne thyn hous ne be thou no leoun," 393/1889
House of Fame, Chaucer's, alluded to, 684/1086
Houseled, one should be, at least once a year, 678/1026, 7
Hubert. See Hubert
Hubert, the name of the limitour among the Canterbury pilgrims, 8/269
Hugelyn of Pyze. See Ugolino of Pisa
Hugh, Sir, used as a general name of a secular clergyman, 373/1356
Hugh of Lincoln, a boy murdered by the Jews, 189/1874
Hull, a seaport of England, 12/404
Humble folk, Christ's friends and contubernal with the Lord, 653/760
Humility, or meekness, 1. of heart, 2. of mouth, 3. of works, a remedy against Pride, 626, 7/476—83
Hunting, Theseus' love of, 48, 49/1673—82
Husband, a, must not be inquisitive, 90/3163; Housbondes been alle goode, and han ben yoore. That knowen wyues, 138/272, 3; the happiness between husband and wife, 502, 503/803—5
Huwe. See Hugh
Hymen, the god of marriage and nuptial solemnities, 456/1730
Hypermnestra, one of the fifty daughters of Danaus, the only one who preserved her husband's life, 131/75
Hypocrisy, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 619/394
Hypsipyle, daughter of Thoas and queen of Lemnos, in the time of the Argonauts, 131/67

Jack, used as a general name, 373/1357
Jack of Dover, a young Dover pike or luce, 125/4347
Jacob, the patriarch, 210/2288; 335/56; 446/1362; 623/443
Jacobus de Voragine (or Jacobus Januensis), Archb. of Genoa, b. 1230, d. 1298; author of the famous Legenda Aurea; alluded to, 530/82
Iakke. See Jack, 373/1357
Iakke of Douere. See Jack of Dover, 125/4347
Iame, Seint. See James, St.
James, St., the son of Alphaeus, called the Less, one of the twelve apostles; his Epistle quoted, 212/2309; 234/2707; 242/2866; 251/3059; 439/1154; 615/348
James, St., the son of Zebedee, called the Greater, one of the twelve apostles; shrine of, at Compostella, in Galicia, 14/466; oaths by, 122/4264; 178/1545; 342/312; 376/1443; Gam. 9/277; 19/665; 22/764; 23/797
Iane, a coin of Genoa, of small value, 435/999; 191/1925
Ianekyn. See Jankin
Jangling, one of the twigs of pride, defined, 620/406; (babbling), the sin of (Eccles. v. 2, and a philosopher quoted), 642/649, 50; "litel janglyng causeth muchel rest," 587/350
Ianicula (Janicle), the father of Griselda, in Clerk's Tale, 409/208; 412/304; 416/404; 423/632
Jankin, the Clerk, the Wife of Bath's fifth husband, 349/548; 350/595; 351/628; 354/713
Jankin, dim. of John, i.e. Johnny; the Host derisively addresses the Parson, "O Iankyn be ye there," 167/172
Jankin, an apprentice alluded to by Wife of Bath, 342/303; 344/383
Jankin, the lord's squire in Summoner's Tale, 401/2288, 2293

Iankyn. See Jankin

January (Januarie), the old husband to the young wife
May, in the Merchant's Tale, 447/1393; 449/1478; 452
1566, 1579, 1586; 455/1695; 456/1724; 457/1750; 458/
1788, 1801, 1805; 459/1821; 460/1859; 461/1886, 1895,
1920; 462/1946, 56; 464/2013, 23; 466/2042, 2054, 2056;
466/2065, 2069; 467/2102, 2118, 2134; 468/2156;
469/2186; 470/2218; 473/2230; 474/2355; 475/2412, 2417

Janus, god of the sun and the year, to whom January was
sacred, 515/1252

Japing, joking, the sin of; japers are the devil's apes;
642/651, 2

Jason, chief of the Argonauts, alluded to as a false lover,
131/74; 494/549

Jay tout perdu mon temps et mon labour, 606/248.
(Quoted also in Chaucer's Fortune.)

Idle words, the sin of, 642/647, 8

Idleness, the Porter of Venus' dwelling, 56/1940; the
nurse of vices, 527/1—21; the gate of all harms; an idle
man like to a place without walls—the devils may enter on
every side, 648/714—17

Idolater and an avaricious man, difference between an
(Exod. xx. 3, 4, quoted), 652/749—51

Jealous people are dangerous, 114/3961

Jephthah (lepte), the Judge of Israel who sacrificed his
daughter (Judges xi. 29—40), 309/240

Jeremiah (Jeremie, Jeremye), the Hebrew prophet, 323/
635; 593/76; 601/180; 637/592

Jerome, Saint, quoted on good works, 238/2785; his
Contra Jovinianum alluded to, 353/674; stories of true
women, drawn from his work Contra Jovinianum, lib. 1,
c. 39, 518—21/1568—1456; quoted in Parson's Tale, 599/
159; 600/174; 614/345; 643/657; 667/904; 670/933; 680/
1047

Jerusalem, the holy city, 14/463; 261/3337; 262/3386;
275/3786; 348/495; 590/51; 593/80; 656/589

Jesu, Jesus. See Christ

Jesus, the son of Sirach, author of the Apocryphal Book,
Ecclesiasticus, ab. 200 years B.C., 202/2185; 206/2235;
207/2249; 213/2331; 471/2250

Jew, a Hebrew, 185/1760; 186/1791; 314/351; 315/
364; pl. Jews (Jewes), 185/1749, 1755; 186/1763, 1789;
187/1810, 1819; 189/1875; 196/2054; 275/3782; 318/475;
637/591; 638/599; 644/663; 665/889

Jewry (Jewerye), Jews' quarter in a city, 183/1679; 185/
1741; 186/1782
Ignorance, the mother of all harm, 648/710
*Ignotum per ignotius*, 573/1457
Ihesu and Ihesus. *See* Christ
Ihesu Crist. *See* Christ
*Ihesus filius Syrak.* *See* Jesus, son of Sirach
*Ihesus Nazarenus rex Iudeorum*, 609/284
Ilion (Ilium), ancient city of Troy, 139/289 (Skeat substitutes Theseus in this place), 298/4546
Imagination, men may die of, 108/3612
Impatience, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/397
*Ind* (Inde), India, 62/2156; 325/722; 357/824; 441/1199; 482/110
*In manus tuas* (Ps. xxx. 6; Luke xxiii. 46), 123/4287
Innocence, Accidie or Sloth an enemy to, 645/682; betrayal of, 305/91, 92
Innomine Thesu, &c. 637/598
*In Principio*, the first words of the Gospel of John (see Furnivall's Temp. Pref. to 6-T. ed. of Chaucer’s C. T., p. 93), 8/254; "for al so siker as In principio," i. e., for as sure as gospel, 292/4353
Insolence, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/399
Insurrection (armed complaint), portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2012
Joab, commander of the Hebrew army under King David, 456/1719
Jocim. *See* Eliachim
Job, the hero of the Book of Job, 203/2189; 346/436; 377/1491; 432/932; 697/134; 600/176, 178; 601/181; 603/211, 217; 604/223
Joce (or Jose or Josse), St., Sanctus Judocus, a saint of Ponthieu (*Vocab Hagiol. pref’d to Ménage, Etymol. Fr.*), oath by, 347/483
John, the carpenter, in the Miller's Tale, 97/3369; 100/3501; 101/3513; 102/3577; 104/3639; 105/3662.
John, the clerk or scholar of Soler hall, Cambridge, in the Reeve's Tale, 115/4013 et seq.
John, Daun, the friar in Shipman's Tale, 169/1233, 1248; 170/1258, 1279, 1288; 172/1348; 173/1377; 174/1411; 175/1445; 176/1472, 1484, 1486, 1488, 1498, 1502, 1504; 177/1509, 1512, 1527, 1532, 1539; 179/1592
John, Daun, name by which the Host addresses the Monk, 3119
John, Sir, name by which the Host addresses the Nun's Priest, 4000; "This sweete preest, this goody man sir John," 282
John, St., the Evangelist, 186/1772; 200/2141; 252/307; 326/752; 338/164; 381/1647; 387/1800; 400/2252; 495/596; 603/216; 615/349; 634/565; 661/841; 670/933
John, the friar in Summoner's Tale, 2171
Jonah (Jonas), the Hebrew prophet, 486
Joseph, son of Jacob and Rachel, viceroy of Egypt, 291/4320; 623/443; 664/880
Joseph, the husband of Mary, 286
Joue. See Jove
Jovinian. See Contra Jovinianum
Jouis. See Jupiter
Jove, the supreme Roman deity, 2222. See Jupiter
Jovinian, fabulous emperor of Rome, in Gesta Romanorum, cap. lix., celebrated for his pride and luxury? 1929
Jovinian. See Jovinian
Joy, preserves freshness in age, 2185; Ioye after wo and wo after gladnesse, 2841; worldly joy cannot last, 1133—38; 2055; the latter ende of ioye is wo, 4395
Irascimin et nolite peccare (Ps. iv. 5), 540
Ire, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 57/1997; "a thing that hye god defended," 1834; one of the greatest of the deadly sins, 2055; "executour of pryde," 2010; causes often to do or say amiss, 783; treated of, as one of the Seven deadly sins, 43/533—653; its remedy, 45—654—76
Irreverence, one of the twigs of Pride, 391; defined, 403
Isaac, the patriarch, 2188; 1365
Isaiah, the Hebrew prophet, 198; 210; 281
Isidore of Seville, or, Isidorus Hispalensis, St., bp. of Seville, b. ab. 570, d. 636; 89; 551
Isiphilee. See Hypsipyle
Isope. See Æsop
Israel, kingdom of, 258; 3342
Italy (Itayle), a country of Europe, 441; 3650:
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

404/33; 406/57; 411/266; 439/1132; 440/1178; 450/1511; 456/1714

Iubaltare. See Gibraltar

Iudas. See Judas Iscariot

Judas Iscariot, the betrayer, 294/4417; 373/1350; 561/1003; 629/502; 639/616; 647/696; 677/1015; name used for a betrayer, 561/1007

Judas Maccabeus, the Jewish general, whose exploits are related in the apocryphal books of the Maccabees, 241/2848

Judge, a wise, characterized, 205/2221

Judgment, hasty, followed by hasty repentance, 205/2220; 212/2325

Judgment Day, dread of, should move to Contrition, 599/158—165

Judicum, gen. pl., i.e. Liber Iudicum, the Book of Judges, 257/3236

Judith, the heroine of the apocryphal book so named, the slayer of Holofernes, 159/939; 210/2289; 274/3761; 446/1366

Iuerie (Iues). See Jewry, Jews

Julian, St., the patron of hospitality, 10/340

Julius. See Caesar, Caius Julius

July, the seventh month, 467/2133

Juno, the sister and wife of Jupiter, 39/1329; 45/1543; 1555; 1559

Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans, 70/2442; 79/2786; 80/2792; 86/3035; 87/3069; 279/3934; 280/3942; 540/364; 541/413; the planet, 470/2224; a name for tin, 555/828

Iuppiter. See Jupiter

Iustinus, one of the friends of January, in the Merchant's Tale, 449/1477; 450/1519; 454/1655; 456/1689

Iustyn. See Justinus

Juvenal, the Roman satirist, quoted on poverty (Sat. x. 22), 368/1192—4

Iuyl. See July

Ive, St., an exemplary priest of Lantriguier, in Bretagne, 174/147; 391/1943

Kaukasous. See Caucasus

Kayrrud (2. Kairrud, 3. kayrrud, 4. 5. kynrede, 6. kynred?) 505/808

Kenelm, Saint, king of Mercia, of the Saxon Heptarchy, a.d. 819; his dream related, 291/4300
Kent, St. Thomas of, 95/3291
Kenulph, king of Mercia, of the Saxon Heptarchy, 291/4301
Kind: "alle thyng repeirynge to his kinde gladeth hym self," 495, 496/608, 609
Kings, Book of, 666/897
Knight, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 2, 3/4378; his Tale of Palamon and Arcite, 26—88/859—3108; stops the Monk’s tragic stories, as "a greet disese," 281/3957—69; reconciles the Pardoner and the Host, 332/960—967
Koran. See Alcoran

Làban, the uncle and father-in-law of the patriarch Jacob, 623/443
Lacedáemon, or Sparta, an ancient city of Peloponnesus, capital of Laconia, 322/605; 518/1380
Lacedomya. See Laodamia
Lacedomye, Lacidomye. See Lacedáemon
Ladomya. See Laodamia
Ladon, the dragon which guarded the golden apples of the Hesperides, 259/3291
Lamech (Gen. iv. 19), alluded to as the first bigamist, 335/54; 494/550
Lameth. See Lamech
Lamwel. See Lemuel
Lancelot du Lac, the most famous knight of Arthur’s Round Table, 294/4402; 486/287
Laodamia, wife of Protesilaus, 131/71; 520/1445
Latin, the language of the Romans, 146/519; 184/1713; 292/4355; 314/344; 391/1934; 513/1174
Latin words, phrases, and sentences: Actuum, g. pl., 637/597; O Alma Redemptoris mater, 184/1708; 185/1744; 187/1802; 188/1831, 1845; Amor vincit omnia, 5/162; Angelus ad virginem, 92/3216; Cor meum eructauit, 391/1934; De civitate Dei, 652/754; Deus hic, 386/1770; Ihesus Nazarenus rex Iudeorum, 609/284; in manus tuas, 123/4287; In nomine Ihesu, &c., 637/598; In Principio, 8/254; 292/4355; Iisce, &c., 637/597; Indicem, g. pl., 257/3236; Mulier est hominis confusio, 292/4354; Non est alius nomen sub celo, &c., 637/597; Pater noster, 104/3638; 629/508; 680/1039; Placebo, 395/2075; 639/617; qui cum patre, 385/1734; 685/1092; Questio quid juris, 19/646; Radix malorum est cupiditas, 314/334; 316/426; Significant, 19/662; Te Deum, 389/1866
Latumyus (Camb. MS. Latumyus), a person mentioned by the Wife of Bath, 355/757
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Latyn.  See Latin

Launcelot (Launcelet) de lake.  See Lancelot

Law; "swich lawe as a man yeueth another wight he sholde hym seluen vsen it by right," 130/43, 44

Lazarus, the brother of Mary and Martha, in the Gospel (John xi.), 202/2177

Lazarus, the beggar of the Parable (Luke xvi. 20); "Lazar and dunes lyueden diversly," 389/1877

Leander, the lover of Hero, 131/69

Lechery, one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 660—668/836—914; its remedy, 668—672/915—957

Legende of Goode Women, Chaucer's, alluded to by the Man of Law, as "the seintes legende of Cupide," 130/61; alluded to as 'The book of the xxv. Ladies,' 684/1086

Lemuel, King (Prov. xxxi. 4, 5), 321/584, 585

Leo, sign of the Zodiac, 486/265; 510/1058.  See Lion

Leon.  See Leo

Lepe, a town in Spain; its wine alluded to, 321/563, 570

Lernaean Hydra, slain by Hercules, 259/3295

Lettoy.  See Lithuania

Liber aureolus Theophrasti, de Nuptiis, quoted by Jerome, in his Contra Jovinianum; alluded to, 352/671

Liberality, reasonable, a remedy against avarice, 658/811, 12; foolish and vain l., to be eschewed, 658/813—17

Libra, a sign of the Zodiac, 589/11

Lieys (Lyeys), in Armenia, taken from the Turks by Pierre de Lusignan, about 1367, 2/58

Life of all things, limited, 85, 86/2994—3016; examples drawn from the oak, the hard stone, the broad river, great towers, man, 86/3017—3034

Lignano, Giovanni di, Prof. of Canon Law at Bologna in 1363; died at Bologna in 1383, 404/34

Ligurge.  See Lygurge

Limitour, a great honour to be a, 371/1293—97

Limitour, story of a, in Summoner's Tale, 385—401/1709—2294

Lincoln, a cathedral city of England, 189/1874.  See Hugh of Lincoln

Lion, sign of the Zodiac, 486/265

Lithuania, an anc. territory of Europe, west of Russia, and north of Poland, 2/54

Livelihood, Accidie or Sloth an enemy to one's, 646/685

Livius Patavinus, Titus, the Roman historian, 303/1
Lollard, a term of reproach, applied to a follower of Wyclif, 167/1173, 1177

Lollere. See Lollard

Lombards, people of Lombardy, 178/1557

Lombardy, a territory of northern Italy, 269/3590; 404/46; 405/72; 433/945; 443/1245; 484/193

London, capital city of England, 11/382; 15/509; 104/3632; 125/4325; 349/550; 561/1012; 576/1

London apprentice, described, 127, 8/4365

Londoun. See London

Looth. See Lot

Lord, Theseus' opinion of a true, 51/1774—81; lords and churls have a common origin and destiny, 663/761, 2; lords should have the love rather than the dread of their churls, 653/763; lords who devour the possessions of the poor, are like wolves, 654/775

Lordships, oppressive, come of covetousness, 652/752; St. Augustine, De Civitate, lib. ix, and Gen. ix. 25—27, referred to, 652/754

Lord's Prayer. See Pater Noster

Loss of property, but not loss of time, recoverable, 129/27, 28

Lot, his drunkenness alluded to (Gen. xix. 33), 318/485—7

Love; "who shal yeue a louere any lawe: Loue is a gretter lawe," 34/1164, 1165; "a man moot nedes loue," 34/1169; love is free, 47/1666; 501/767; loue ne lordship wol noght hir thankes haue no felaweshipe, 47/1625, 1626; personified, 45/1564; the power of, 52/1785—1790; symbolic representations on the wall of the temple of Venus, of the power of, 56/1918—1946; all things bound with the chain of, 85/2987—2993; "alwey the nye slye maketh the ferre leue to be looth," 97/3392, 3393; "is noght oold as whan it is newe," 430/857; will not be constrained, 501/764—766: the most submissive in, have the most advantage, 502/771, 772; love of God and neighbor, a remedy against envy, 630/515, 516; how a man should do 3 deeds of love against 3 deeds of hate (Matt. v. 44, quoted), 631/524—526; the medicine that casts out the venom of envy from man's heart, 631/531

Love days, allusion to, 8/258

Lover's malady, 40/1355—1379

Loy, St. "Hire grettest ooth was but by seint Loy," 4/120. The saint meant is uncertain. See Mr. Furnivall's letter to the London Academy, May 22, 1880, p. 388, and replies, May 29, pp. 403, 404

Loy, St. (St. Eloi, bp. of Noyon [Lot. Eligius], patron of goldsmiths and farriers); "I pray to god saue thee, and
seint loy,” 379/1564. “Loye; elegius, nomen proprium.”


Luc. See Luke, St.

Lucan (M. Annaeus Lucanus), the Roman poet, author of the Pharsalia, 142/401; 279/3909

Lucia. See Lucilia

Lucifer, the fallen angel, 655/788; the story of, in the Monk’s Tale, 256/3189—3195

Lucilia, a woman who killed her husband with a love potion, mentioned in the Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum de non ducenda uxore, 355/747, 752

Lucina, an appellation of Diana, as the goddess presiding over child-birth; portrayed on the wall of Dian’s temple, 60/2083—2086; the moon, 509/1045

Lucrece, or Lucretia, the wife of Collatine, ravished by Sextus Tarquinius, 130/63; 519/1405

Lucrese. See Lucrece

Lucye. See Lucilia

Luke, St., the Evangelist, 200/2141; 647/700, 702

Lumbardes, Lombardye. See Lombards, Lombardy

Luna, a woman who poisoned her husband, mentioned in the Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum de non ducenda uxore, 355/747, 750

Luna, the moon, a name for silver, 555/826; 573/1440

Lust, its influence and effects, 159/925—31


Lycurgus, King of Thrace, described, in the train of Palamon, 61, 62/2128—2154; 76/2644

Lydia (Lyde), an ancient kingdom in Asia Minor, 279/3917; 291/4328

Lyeys. See Lieys

Lyghurge, King of Thrace. See Lycurgus

Lying, various kinds of, enumerated, 638, 9/608—11; comes of avarice, 656/795

Lyma. See Luna

Lynyman. See Lignano

Mabely, name of the old woman in Friar’s Tale, 381/1626

Maccabæus. See Judas Maccabæus

Maccabees, the apocryphal books so called, 274/3769; 277/3845

Macedonia, an ancient kingdom of south-eastern Europe, 277/3846; 520/1435
Machabee. See Maccabees
Macidonye, Macidoyne. See Macedonia
Macrobius Ambrosius Aurelius Theodosius, the Grammarians, end of 4th cent., author of a Comm. on Cicero's Somnium Scipionis, 291/4313
Madness (woodnesse), portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2011
Madrian. See Mathurin, St.
Magdalene, or Mary Magdalene, 629/502, 504; 671/947
Magdalene, the "woman who was a sinner" (Luke vii. 37), 675/996
Magdaleyne. See Magdalene
Magic, feats of, enumerated, 512/1143—1151
Magic mirror, 482/132—141
Magic scenes, 513/1189—1201
Magnanimitie, or greatness of spirit, a remedy against Accidie or Sloth, 650/731—33
Magnificence, or the doing of great works of goodness, a remedy against Accidie or Sloth, 650/736
Mahomet, the Arabian prophet, 136/224; 140/333, 336, 340
Mahoun. See Mahomet
Makomete. See Mahomet
Malice, two kinds of, 1. hardness of heart, 2. opposition to known truth, 627/486, 7
Malkin (Malkyn), dim. of Mary, Molly, used generically for any young woman, 130/30; name of a maid in Nun's Priest's Tale, 298/4574
Malle, name of the widow's sheep, in Nun's Priest's Tale, 283/4021
Malmsey. See Malvesie
Malvesie (Maluesye, Malvoisie), a wine, named from Malvasia, or Napoli di Malvasia, in the Morea, 170/1260
Malyne, i.e. Malkin, dim. of Mary, Molly, 121/4236
Manciple, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 17/567—586
Manciple's Head-Link; the Host calls on the Cook for a tale, but in his drunken condition he prefers to sleep, and the Manciple offers to tell the next tale, and is accepted by the Host, 576—579/1—104
Manciple's Tale, of Phoebus and his white crow that tells him of his wife's infidelity during his absence from home, and is turned black therefor (Ovid's Met. Bk. ii. 534—550), 580—587/105—362
Man of Law, 130/33

Man of Law's Head-Link; the Host reminds the company that the fourth part of the day is gone, and entreats them not to lose time; calls for a tale, on the Man of Law who, after enumerating the several stories that had been told by Chaucer and alluding to "cursed stories," "unkind abominations" which Chaucer, and which he himself, would not tell, begins his story of the pious Constance, 129—131/1—98

Man of Law's Prologue; he addresses Poverty, and cites its ills, 132, 133/99—133

Man of Law's Tale, of the pious Constance, 134—166/134—1162

Manslaughter, an offspring of ire or anger, 634/564; kinds of spiritual m.: 1. by hate (1 John iii. 15, quoted): 2. by backbiting: 3. in giving wicked counsel by fraud (Prov. iii. 27, 28, quoted), 634/562—569; bodily m., slaying with the tongue; giving order or counsel to slay a man, 634/570: m. in deed, 1. by law, as when a judge condemns a man to death: 2. in self-defence: 3. by accident: 4. when a woman by negligence overlies her child: 5. by preventing conception, inducing abortion: 6. when a woman kills her child after birth, for shame: 7. when a man by lecnery or blows destroys a foetus, 635/571—579

March, the month, 1/2; 349/546; 387/1782; 480/47; the month in which the world began, 293/4378

Marcian. See Capella, Martianus Mineus Felix

Mardoche. See Mordecai

Marie, Egypcien. See Mary, St., the Egyptian

Marie, Seinte, the Virgin. See Mary, the Virgin

Mark, St., the Evangelist, 200/2141; 338/145

Market; "greet prees at market maketh deere ware, and to greet cheepe is holde at tilte prys," 348/522, 523

Marriage, Wife of Bath's views of, 334—357/1—828; the wo that is in, 334/3; never forbidden by God, 335/60; the tribulation in, 339/173—183; a great sacrament, 445/1319; a horrible thing to break the sacrament of (Matt. xix. 5, quoted), 661/842; what this sacrament betokens (Exod. xx. 17, St. Augustine, Matt. v. 28, quoted), 661/843; a great sacrament established by God; true effect of; figured between Christ and Holy Church, 668/918—922; how a man should bear him towards his wife (Ephes. v. 25, quoted), 669/925—929; how a wife should be subject to her husband (1 Pet. iii. 1—7, St. Jerome and St. Gregory, quoted), 669, 670/930—938. See Wedlock

Marrok, the Strayte of. See Morocco

Mars, the god of war, 29/975; 45/1559; 49/1682, 1708,
CHAUCER'S CANT. TALES: ELLES. MS. 49

50/1747; 55/1907; 59/2050; 62/2159; 64/2248; 68/2369, 2372; 70/2431, 2434, 2441; 71/2473; 74/2581; 76/2669; temple of, described, 57/1981—1994; representations on the walls, 57—59/1967—2040; statue of, described, 59/2041—2050; Arcite's invocation of, 68/2367; 139/301, 305; 351/612, 613; 480/I5O; a name for iron, 555/827

Martes, gen. s. See Mars

Martin (Martyn), St., a Hungarian by birth, served in the army under Constantius and Julian; an opponent of the Arians; d. at Tours; oaths by, 172/1338; Gam. 2/53; 7/225; 172/1338

Mary, the Virgin, 150/641; 159/620; 179/1592; 183/1698; 189/1880; 193/1974; 312/308; 324/685; 380/1604; 446/1337; 461/1899; 475/2418; 562/1062; prayer of Constance to, 156, 157/841—54; the Prioress's invocation to, 182, 183/1657—1677; the second nun's, 528—530/29—84

Mary, St., the Egyptian; allusion to her being miraculously fed in a cave, 145/500

Mathurin, St., an oath "by that precious corpus Madrian," 253/3082

Matthew (Mathew), St., the Evangelist, 200/2141; 323/634; 636/588; 661/842, 845; 679/1036

Maudelayne, the name of the Shipman's barge, 12/410

Mauny, Sir Oliver, of Armorica (Bretagne), an accomplice in the murder of Peter the Cruel, of Spain; Chaucer conceals the name under the synonym of wicked nest, O.Fr. mau ni (Skeat), 268/3576

Maur (Maure), St., a disciple of St. Benedict, and from whom a Congregation of Benedictines in France was named, 6/173

Maurice, gen. Maurices. See Mauricius

Mauricius, the son of Constance and king Ælla, in the Man of Law's Tale, 152/723; 163/1063; 164/1086; 165/1121, 1127

Mawmet (from Mahomet), an idol, 652/749; 662/860

Mawnettrie (from Mahomet), idolatry, 652/750

Maxime. See Maximus

Maxims. See Proverbs

Maximus, an officer of the Roman Prefect Almachius, 540/368, 372, 377; 541/400

May, the month, 3/92; 31/1034, 1937, 1042; 43/1462; 44/1500; 48/1675; 71/2484; 129/6; 349/546; 505/906, 907; 506/928; 570/1343; May wole haue / no slogardrie a nyght, 31/1042; the influence of the season of, 31/1043 — 45; description of a May morning, 43/1491 — 96; invoked, 44/1510—12

May, the wife of January, in the Merchant's Tale, 455/
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

1693; 457/1742, 1774; 458/1782; 459/1822; 460/1851, 1859, 1871, 1882; 461/1886, 1888, 1895, 1914; 462/1932, 1955; 463/1977; 464/1995, 2002; 466/2054; 466/2092, 2100; 467/2116, 2137, 2157; 469/2185; 470/2218; 473/2321, 2328

Mayus, the wife of January in the Merchant's Tale. See May

Mecene. See Messene

Medea, the sorceress, wife of Jason, 56/1944; 131/72

Medes, the people of Medea, a province of the Assyrian Empire, 263/3425

Megacosmus of Bernardus Sylvestris (12th cent.), passage imitated from, 135, 136/190

Melibee. See Melibeus

Melibe-Monk Link; the Host contrasts his shrewish and big-armed wife with Melibeus' patient wife, Prudence, calls for a tale on the Monk, who proposes to tell a series of Tragedies, 253—255/3079—3180

Melibeus, Chaucer's Tale of: Melibeus, a young man mighty and rich, whose wife Prudence and daughter Sophie were beaten and wounded, in his absence, by three of his old enemies, calls together a great congregation of folk, of various kinds, to take counsel what is best to be done in the case. The greater number advise vengeance, but Dame Prudence, by means of an elaborate argument, backed by quotations from Holy Writ and ancient authors, at last prevails against all evil advisers, and persuades her husband to become reconciled to his enemies, and to forgive as he hopes to be forgiven, 201—252/2157—3078

Menace, the sin of, 642/646

Merchandise, bodily and spiritual, 654/777; bodily m., when lawful, and when cursed and damnable, 654/778—780

Merchant, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 8, 9/270—284; merchant of Shipman's Tale, 168—180/1191—1624; of deceit between merchant and merchant, 654/778—780

Merchant's End-Link; the Host prays God to keep him from such a wife as January's wife May; declares his own wife to be "as true as any steel," but "a labbyng shrew," with "an heepe of vices mo;" 476/2419—2440
Merchant's Prologue: the merchant complains of his wife and brings her "passyng crueltie" into contrast with Griselda's "grete pacience," 442/1213—1244

Merchant's Tale of January and May, illustrating that "men sholde wedden after hire estaat for youthe and elde is often at debaat," 443—475/1245—2418

Merchants, rich, addressed by the Man of Law, 132, 133/122—130

Merchants of Syria described, 134/134—140

Mereia, one of the Kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy, 291/4302

Mercury (Mercurius), the messenger of the gods, description of, 40, 41/1385—90

Mercury, the planet, 353/697, 699, 703, 705; 497/672; a name for quicksilver, 555/827; 573/1438

Mercy, recommended to Melibeus by his wife, 251/3050—58; a remedy against avarice, 657/804—10

Mertenrike (for Merceenrike), 291/4302. See Mercia

Messene (MSS. 1, 2, Mecene; 3, Messene; 4, 5, mesue; 6, Mesne), now Mavromati, the later capital of Messenia, a country in Peloponnesus, 518/1379

Metamorphoseos, gen. s. Ovid's Metamorphoses, 131/93

Metaphors: 16/563; 24/823; 26/886, 87; 27/925; 29/982; 71/2469; 87/3061; 89/3115; 108/3774, 75; 110/3852; 111/3865, 3868, 3882, 3883—85; 112/3887; 112/3889—3895; 112/3911; 117/4096; 119/4155; 132/124; 135/165—8; 140/323; 141/358, 364; 143/438; 152/701, 2; 156/833; 164/1069; 181/1626; 187/1799, 1800; 188/1846; 247/2966; 254/3123; 276/3832; 277/3851; 294/4430; 300/4633; 305/75; 320/558, 9; 325/729—31; 337/107, 113; 359/170, 171, 176, 177; 347/477, 478, 484, 487, 489, 492; 350/572, 573; 381/602—604; 395/2091; 403/22; 432/919; 440/1166 — 1169; 450/1516; 441/1553; 468/1783; 1798; 498/505; 506/942; 528/37; 552/730; 562/1069; 563/1080; 569/1301, 1313; 577/42; 578/72; 584/252; 590/26, 35, 36

Metelli. See Metellus

Metellus, Egnatius, killed his wife for wine-drinking (Valerius Maximus, lib. vi. cap. 3), 347/460—462

Methamorphosios. See Metamorphoseos

Micah, the Hebrew prophet, 602/201

Michias. See Micah

Midas, the Phrygian king; the story of his ears (Ovid's Met. lib. xi. fab. 4, 5), 361, 362/951—982

Middleburgh. See Middleburgh

Middleburgh, a port of the island of Walcheren in the Netherlands, 8/277
Might does not make right, 218/2408; when joined to cruelty, 271/3683, 3684
Milan, city and dukedom in Italy, 269/3589
Miletus, the 7 maidens of, that slew themselves to save their virginity, alluded to, 519/1409—1411
Miller, description of a, in the Reeve's Tale, 113/3925
et seq
Miller, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 16, 17/545;—566
Miller, the stealing propensity of the, in Reeve’s Tale, 115/3995—3998
Miller’s daughter, in the Reeve’s Tale, description of, 114/3973—3976
Miller’s Prologue: The Knight’s Tale ended, the Host calls on the Monk for the second tale; the drunken Miller insists on telling next “a legende and a lyf bothe of a carpenter and his wif, how that a clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.” The Reeve tells him to hold his tongue and let be his “lewed drunken harlotrye;” but “he nolde his wordes for no man forbere, but tolde his cherles tale in his manere.” The poet begs to be put out of blame, as he must rehearse the tales, be they better, or worse, 89—91/3109—3186
Miller’s Tale, of a carpenter, and his wife Alisoun who with a clerk “cleped hende Nicholas,” plots against his honor, 92—110/3187—3854
Minotaur, a monster, half man and half bull, slain by Theseus, with the aid of Ariadne, 29/980
Miracle, the, wrought at request of Saturn, in favor of Palamon, 7/2684, 2685
Mischance, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2009, 2010
Monday, second day of the week, 71/2486; 98/3430; 101/3516; 104/3633; 105/3659
Money, chapmen’s plough, 176/1478
Monk, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 5, 6/165—207; called on for a tale, 89/3118, 3119; his definition of tragedy, in the prologue to his tale, 255/3163—3172; his tale de casibus virorum illustrium (Lucifer, Adam, Samson, Hercules, Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, Zenobia, Nero, Holofernes, Antiochus IV. surnamed Epiphanes, Alexander the Great, Julius Caesar, Croesus, Peter the Cruel of Spain, Peter of Cyprus, Bernabo Visconti of Milan, Ugolino, Count of Pisa), 256—270/3181—3652
Monk-Nun’s-Priest’s Link; the Knight stops the Monk in his tedious stories, and the Host tells him his talking is not worth a butterfly, and prays him to say somewhat of hunting, which the Monk declines to do, and the Host calls
on the Nun's Priest for "swich thyng as may oure hertes glade," 281, 282/3957—4010
Monte Viso, in Italy, 404/47; 405/58
Mordecai, the Benjamite, 446/1373
Morocco, the strait of (Strait of Gibraltar), 144/465
Moses, leader of the Israelites, 602/195; 615/355; his fasting alluded to, 390/1885—90; alluded to as having skill in magic, 485/1250
Mother, grief of a bereaved, should be allowed to have its course, for a time, 201/2167
Moyses. See Moses
Mulier est hominis confusio, 292/4354
Murder will out, 186/1766; 289/4242
Muses, the Pierides spoken of as, 131/92
Myda. See Midas
Mynotaur. See Minotaur

Nabal, the husband of Abigail, who protected him against the anger of David (1 Sam. xxv.), 210/2290; 446/1370
Nabugodonosor. See Nebuchadnezzar
Narcissus, a beautiful youth, who slighted the nymph Echo, and died of love of himself, having seen his own face in a fountain (Ovid, Met. 3, fab. 5), 507/952; portrayed on the wall of the temple of Venus, 66/1941
Narcissus. See Narcissus
Nature: ther Nature wol nat wirche, flare wel Phisik, 79/2759, 60; speech imputed to, in regard to the Roman maiden, Virginia, 303, 4/11—28; cannot be restrained, 581/160—62; illustrations of the fact, 581, 2/163—86
Nazarenus is as muche for to seye as florissfyng, 609/288
Nebuchadnezzar, the Great, King of Babylon, story of, in Monk's Tale, 261, 2/3333—72; pronounced a god, by Holofernes, 274/3752; his vision alluded to, 596/126
Necessity, wisdom to make a virtue of, 87/3041, 2; "I made vertu of necessitee," 495/593
Need; nede has na peer, Hym boes serue hym selne that has na swayn, 116/4026, 27
Negligence (or recklessness), the nurse of all harm, 648/710, 11; the remedy, 648/712, 13
Neighbour, how a man shall love his, 630/517—21; how an enemy is included in the name, 630, 31/521—23
Neot, St., a Saxon Saint, oath by, 108/3771
Neptunus, god of the sea, 509/1047
Nero, the infamous Roman Emperor; the slaughter of,
portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2032;  
story of, in Monk’s Tale, 271—3/3653—3740; his burning  
of Rome alluded to, 298/4560—63  
Neroun (Lat. acc. Neronem). See Nero  
Nessus, the Centaur, slain by Hercules with a poisoned  
arrow for offering violence to Deianira, 260/3318  
New; ‘‘ther is no newe gyse that it nas old,’’ 61/2125  
Newgate. See Newgate  
Newgate, name of a prison in London, 128/4402  
Nicanor, a general of Antiochus Epiphanes (2 Maccabees  
ix.), 275/3781  
Nicerates, gen. s. Niceratus, father, or son, of Nicias, the  
Athenian general? Nicerates wyf that for swich cas birafte  
hir self hir lyf, 520/1437. [MS. 2, Nyceratis; 3, Nycher-  
ates; 4, Nicharatyfs; 5, Nicharatys; 6, Nichostratifs]  
Nicanore (MSS. 2, 3, Nychanore; 4, 5, Nichasore; 6,  
Nichasor); the Theban maiden that for Nichanore hir  
seluen slow, 520/1432. Latin note: ‘‘Nichanor victis  
Thebis vnius captiue virginis superatus est.’’ Which of  
the several ancient generals of the name is meant is  
uncertain. See Nicanor  
Nicholas, the clerk, or scholar, in the Miller’s Tale, 92/  
3199; 94/3272, 3285, 3288; 95/3298, 3303; 97/3386, 3396,  
3397; 98/3401, 3403, 3409, 3413, 3420, 3424, 3426; 99/  
3437, 3444, 3462; 100/3472, 3477  
Nicholas, Saint, his early piety alluded to, 184/1704.  
See Tyrwhitt’s note, v. 13444  
Nicholay. See Nicholas  
Niggard; ‘‘he is to greet a nygard that wolde werne a man  
to lighte his candle at his lanterne,’’ 343/333, 334  
Night-spell, pronounced by the carpenter, in Miller’s Tale,  
100/3483—3486  
Nineveh, capital of the ancient Assyrian empire, 145/  
487; 560/974  
Noah, the patriarch, 101/3518, 3534, 3539; 102/3560;  
103/3582; 104/3616; 109/3818; 110/3834; 653/766  
Noah’s wife, an allusion to her obstinacy, as represented  
in the Mysteries, 101/3539. 3540  
Noe. See Noah  
Non est alium nomen sub celo, &c. (Acts iv. 12), 637/597  
Norfolk (Northfolk), a county in the East of England,  
18/619  
Northumberland, Northumbrelond. See Northumber-  
land  
Northumberland, the region of country north of the  
Humber (Yorkshire is meant, Skeat), 146/508; 148/578
Note. See Neot, St.

Novel (Fr. Noël, Christmas, from Lat. natalis), a cry of joy and festivity, 515/1255

Nun, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 4, 5/118—164

Nun-Canon's-Yeoman Link: the Second Nun's Tale of Saint Cecilia finished, at Boughton - under - Blean the Pilgrims are overtaken by a Canon and his Yeoman; the Canon's appearance described; talk between the Host and the Yeoman in regard to the Canon, who drawing near and hearing what the yeoman is saying of him and his alchemy, rides away "for verray sorwe and shame." The Yeoman then proposes to tell all he knows about his master's rascalties, 547—551/354—719

Nun's Priest's Tale, of the Cock and Hen (Chanticleer and Partlet), and the Fox, 283—300/4011—4636

Nynuyee. See Nineveh

Oaths: by the sweete seinte Anne, 380/1613; by Seint Austyn, 181/1631; by Seint Charite, Gam. 13/451; par charite, 197/2081; by my crom, 118/4099; by the crows which hat seint Elyne fond, 331/951; by seint Cutberd, 118/4127; by Seint Denys of ffrance, 172/1341; depar-dieux, 130/39; 374/1395; by my fader kyn, 116/4038; by my fader soule, 475/2393; 254/3127; by thy fader kyn, 577/37; by youre fader kyn, 254/3121; by my fai, Gam. 9/301; by my fay, 116/4034; 450/1505; by my feith, 375/1403; 397/2137; 570/1334; Gam. 4/95; 25/868; by my fey, 125/4356; 326/762; 339/203; 340/215; 378/1535; 388/1811; 399/2236; 576/13; vpon my feith, 254/3125; par ina fey, 194/2010; by thy feith, 126/4358; 379/1551; vp-on thy fey, 364/1057; by youre fey, 368/1002; 403/9; Elles the feend me fecche out of this place, 163/1064; the foule feend me fecche, 380/1610; by Seint Gile, 568/1185; by God, 116/4026, 4036; 117/4089; 122/4252; 570/1327; 571/1372, etc.; by God aboue, 340/207; by god oure heuene kyng, 179/1583; by god hat all made, Gam. 14/469; by god that for vs deyde, 457/1062; by god and by the hooly sacrament, 326/757; by god and by Seint Iohn, 162/1019; 338/164; by god and by seint Martyn, 172/1338; By god and by this Porthos I yow swere, 171/1325; goddes Armes, 324/692; By goddes Armes, 323/654; goddes Armes two, 357/833; by goddes berd, Gam. 9/295; By goddes bones, 253/3087; 477/2; for goddes bones, 307/2153; by goddes booke, Gam. 3/91; by goddes corpus, 107/3743; by goddes dignitee, 122/4270; 324/701; for goddes herte, 109/3815; By god [des] herte, 117/4087; Ey goddes mercy, 476/2419; Ey goddes precious dignitee, 327/752; By goddes precious herte and by his nyales And by the blood of Christ that is in Hayles, 323/651, 2; By God sale, 120/4187; by goddes sweete pyne, 199/2126; 345/385; as help me god, 106/3709; 350/596; 351/605;
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

356/805; as helpe me god, 172/1360; god helpe me so, 290/4615; God helpe me so, 175/1404; 357/825; so helpe me god, 552/740; so god me saue, 95/3323; 108/3795; 396/2112; 571/1361; god so saue me, 388/1809; as god my soule saue, 437/1064; god so my soule saue, 419/505; so god my soule blesse, 576/21; als wisely god my soule blesse, 199/2112; as wisely helpe me the grete god of kynde, 492/469; as helpe me verray god, omnipotent, 346/423; So wysly god my soule brynge at reste, 450/1489; So wysly god my soule brynge in blisse, 469/2175; So wysly help me god out of care and synne, 380/1605; as wys god helpe me, 299/4598; al so god my soule saue, 329/860; so god me speede, 390/2205; as help me crist, 391/1949; thanne haue I cristes curs, 331/946; cristes foo, 108/3782; by cristes ore, Gam. 5/139, 159; 7/231; 10/323; by Ihesu, 106/3711; by Ihesus, 569/967; by Ihesus heuene kyng, 99/3464; by heuene kyng, 475/2407; By heuene kyng, that for vs alle dyde, 282/3086; by hym that harwed helle, 101/3512; by that ilke lord that for vs blede, 173/1368; by nayles and by blood, 312/288; by Armes and by blood and bones, 89/3125; By corpus bones, 253/3096; 312/314; by corpus dominus, 181/1625; by myn hals, Gam. 12/391; Be seint Iame, Gam. 19/665; 23/797; by seint Iame, 376/1443; by that lord that called is seint Iame, 122/4264; by god and by seint Iame, 178/1545; By seynt Iame in Galys, Gam. 9/277; by seint Iame in Galys, Gam. 22/764; by seint Ieoe, 347/483; by seint John, 326/752; 387/1800; 400/2252; by god and by seint John, 162/1019; 388/164; by that lord |pat clepid is seint Yue, 391/1943; by that lord |pat clepid is Seint Yve, 174/1417; bi |oure lewte, Gam. 19/657; by seint Loy, 4/120; by that precious corpus Madrian, 253/3082; by seynt Martyn, Gam. 2/53; by seynt Martyn, Gam. 7/225; by god and by seynt Martyn, 172/1358; Marie, 173/1592; 562/1062; Seynte Marie, 461/1899; By seinte Marie, 324/685; lady Seinte Marie, 380/1604; goddes Mooder, 398/2202; by the heuenes queene, 563/1089; By oure lady, 570/1354; By myghty Mars, 19/4708; by myghty Mars the rede, 50/1747; By seinte note (i.e. St. Neot), 108/3771; parde, 339/200; 342/310; 343/335; 354/712; 376/1468; 379/1565; 383/1675; 442/1234; parfay, 132/110; 163/1037; 156/849; Peter (i.e. by St. Peter), 346/446; 373/1322; 550/665; 558/942, 947; on my porthors (3, 5, portos; 4, 6, portos, i.e. breviary), I make an ooth, 171/1321; By god and by this Porthors I yow swere, 171/1325; by seint Poules belle, 281/3970; by Seint Richere, Gam. 5/137; 6/175; 11/357; 18/619; bi be gode rode, Gam. 19/639; by Seint Ronyan, 312/310; by Seint Ronyan, 313/320; by god and by the holy sacrament, 326/757; by Seint Symon, 395/2094; so haue I blis, 292/4348; so haue I oye or blis, 357/830; swa haue I seel, 121/4239; So moote I brouke wel myne eyen tweye, 296/4490; so moote I go, 549/634; so moote I goon, 502/777; by Termagaunt, 191/2000; So theek, 111/3864; so theech, 331/947; 558/929; as moote I thee, 349/532; al so moote I thee, 369/1215; 371/1271;
CHAUCER’S CANT. TALES: ELLES. MS. 57

442/1226; Al so moote I thee, 194/2007; so moot I thee, 287/4166; 344/361; so moot I thee, 312/309; so mooth I thrue, 394/2034; so moote I thrue, 584/255; al so moot I thryue, 578/80; as euere mooth I thrue, 408/172; So thrue I, 386/1764; So browke I myn cie, Gam. 10/334; so browke I myn hals, Gam. 12/407; so browke I my bone, Gam. 15/489; so browke I my chyn, Gam. 17/567; so euer here I masse, Gam. 15/515; 17/595; so mote I wel the, Gam. 17/577; euel mote I thrue, Gam. 17/586; so mote I wel the, Gam. 24/833; by seint Thomas, 98/3425; 99/3461; 352/666; by seint Thomas of ynde, 442/1230; by seint Thomas of Kent, 95/3291; by my trouthe, 254/3118; 328/323; 514/1231; condemnation of, 322, 323/629.

Obedience, comes of Patience, 645/674; when obedience is perfect, 645/675; what it is, generally, 645/676

Odenathus, or Odenatus, Septimus, ruler of Palmyra, and husband of Zenobia, 265/3462, 3481, 3485; 266/3508.

Old; Ther is no newe gyse that it nas old, 61/2125

Old age; elde has greet auantage; In elde is bothe wysdom and vsage; Men may the olde at renne and noght at rede, 70/2447—49; Auauntyng, liyng, Anger, Conetise, Thise foure sparkles longen vn to eelde, 111/3884, 5; Age, that al wol enuynyme, 347/474

Old Testament, 321/575

Olifant (i. e. Elephant), Sire, the giant in the Rime of Sir Thopas, 194/1998

Oliver, a famous knight of Charlemagne’s Court, 268/3577. 79

Oloferne, Olofermus. See Holofernes

Olyuer, Olyuver. See Oliver

Omer. See Homer

Onedake. See Odenathus

Opiournes. See Epicurus

Oreb. See Horeb

Orewelle, a port in Essex. 8/277

Orleans, a city of France, alluded to as a seat of learning, 511/1118, 1124; 512/1153; 513/1168

Orleans. See Orleans

Orpheus, the mythic Thracian poet and musician, 456/1716

Osanne. See Hosanna

Osenay (Oseney, Oseneye), an abbey in the suburbs of Oxford, 94/3274; 98/3400; 105/3659

Oswald (Osewold), the name of the Reeve, of the Canterbury pilgrims, 90/3151; 111/3860; 112/3909

Old Testament, 321/575
Ote, Sir, one of the 3 brothers, sons of Sir John Boundys, in the spurious Tale of Gamelyn, following 6-T. 128

"Ouer greet a wit, whan a man hath, ful oft hym happeth to mysusen it," 549/648, 649

"Ouerdoon, that that is, it wol nat preeue aright (omne nimium vertitur in vitium), 549/645, 646

Ouides Art.  See Ovid

Ouyde.  See Ovid

Ovid, the Roman poet (Publius Ovidius Naso), quoted, or alluded to, 130/54: 131/93; 201/2166; 224/2515; 229/2605; 353/630; 353/680; 361/952; 362/982; 467/2125

Oxenford.  See Oxford

Oxford, a city of England, or the university of Oxford, 9/285; 92/3187; 96/3329; 348/527; 403/1

Padua (Padwe), town in Italy, 404/27

Palamon and Arcite, the Knight's Tale of, 26—88/859—3108

Palamon, the Theban prince in Knight's Tale, the rival of his cousin Arcite for the hand of Emilia; 30/1014 et seq

Palathia, in Anatolia, a lordship held by Christian Knights under the Turks, 8/65

Palatye.  See Palathia

Pallas, Minerva, goddess of wisdom, 304/49

Palmyra, an ancient city of Syria, 264/3437

Polymeric.  See Palmyra

Pamphilus.  See Pamphilus

Pamphilus, a popular mediaeval Latin poem, in which one Pamphilus gives a history of his amour with Galatea; quoted on the power of riches, 236/2746—2751; the lover, 511/1110

Panik (MSS. 1, 2, 3, Pavik, Pavyk; MS. 4, Panyke; 5, Pavie; 6, Pauyke and Pauyhe; Petrach's Lat. . . . 'comiti de Panico' and 'Panicius comes'; Boccaccio has Panago; Skeat adopts Panik), name of a district in Italy? his suster deere that thilke tyme of Pavik was Countesse, 422/590; the Erl of Pavyk, 427/764; 433/939

Paradise, the garden of Eden, 256/3200; 295/4448; 319/506, 509; 390/1915; 391/1917; 613/325, 326, 327; 664/883; 668/918, 921; heaven, 533/227; 647/703

Paradys.  See Paradise

Pardon, who is worthy to have, for his sins, 247/2963

Pardoner, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 19—21/669—714
Pardoner, the, of the Canterbury Pilgrims, 338/163; 339/185

Pardoner's Preamble; his rascalities and frauds, enumerated by himself, 314—317/329—462

Pardoner's Tale, of Death and the three Rioters, 318—332/463—968

Parents, advice to, 305, 306/93—102

Paris, the capital of France, 4/126; 169/1247; 177/1522; 178/1556; 353/678

Paris, son of Priam, who ravished Helen, 457/1754; alluded to as a false lover, 494/548

Parish-clerk, description of a, 95, 96/3312—3338

Parlament of Foules, Chaucer's, alluded to, 684/1086

Parnassus, Mount, in Greece, sacred to Apollo and the Muses, 500/721

Parson, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 14, 15/477—528

Parson's Tale, the, a Treatise on Penitence, 592—685/75 —1092. See Penitence

Parthians. See Parthians

Partlet, name of the hen, in Nun's Priest's tale, 284/4060, 4075; 285/4078; 291/4295, 4312; 292/4348; 293/4367, 4390, etc.

Parys. See Paris

Passionate man, great harm to put in high place, 303/2016

Pater noster, the Lord's prayer, 104/3638; 629/508; 680/1039; the P. N. characterized; comprises in itself all good prayers; how it must be said; 680/1039—1047

Pathmos. See Patmos

Patience, the great virtue of, and the incitements to (1 Peter ii. 21—23; 2 Cor. iv. 17; Prov. xix. 11, xiv. 29, xv. 18, xvi. 32; James i. 4, quoted), 233, 234/2691—2708; to be exercised in death of children and loss of worldly goods, 203/2188; Job cited as example, 203/2189, 2190; venquysseth thynges pat rigour sholde ne neere atteyne, etc., 502/773—778; a remedy against ire, 643/659—661; incentives to, afforded by Christ, 644/663—669; story of a philosopher who had lost his patience, and was rebuked by a child, 644/670—673; obedience comes of patience, 645/674

Patmos, an island in the Ægean, where St. John wrote his Apocalypse, 186/1773

Paul's, St., of London. See St. Paul's

Paul, St., the Apostle, 202/2179; 212/2320; 222/2481:
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

230/2630; 240/2834; 250/3030; 300/4631; 319/521, 523; 320/530—533; 320/547, 548; 336/73; 338/160; 343/342—345; 381/1677; 388/1819; 590/32; 599/162; 612/322; 614/342, 343; 687/598; 689/619; 640/630; 641/634; 642/651; 649/725; 651/739; 652/748; 658/819, 820; 663/867; 664/879; 666/895; 681/1054

Pavia, a city in Lombardy, Italy, 443/1245
Pavik, Pavyk. See Panik
Pavye. See Pavia
Peace, the good that comes of, 245/2919
Pedmark. See Penmarch
Pedro Alfonso, a converted Jew of Huesca, in Aragon (original name Rabbi Moses Sephardi), b. 1062; author of "Dialogi ... in quibus impia Judæorum opiniones ... confutantur," etc. and Clericalis disciplina; good or harm not to be hastily requited, 207/2243; the fellowship and counsel of old enemies to be eschewed, 216/2379; might does not justify the doing of a thing, 218/2408; the company of strange men in travel to be mistrusted, 228/2499—2502; the evils of poverty, 287/2756, 2757

Pegasus (Pegasee), the winged horse of the Muses, 484/207
Pemondl. See Piedmont
Penelopee. See Penelope

Penance, bodily, an essential of Satisfaction; four kinds of, prayers, watchings, fastings, virtuous teachings or discipline, 679/1038; things that disturb p., dread, shame, hope, and wanhope or despair of mercy, 681/1057; the remedies against these, 682, 688/1059—1075; the fruit of p., 683/1076—1080

Penelope, wife of Ulysses, 131/75; her chastity alluded to, 520/1443, 1444

Penitence, the Parson's Treatise on, in 3 parts: 1 on p. and its first essential, contrition, 593—612/75—315; 2. confession, 612—678/316—1028; 3. satisfaction, 679—683/1029—1080; a full noble way to Christ, 593/80; defined by St. Ambrose, 594/84; by a certain doctor, 594/85; by the Parson, 594/86; 3 actions of p., a. baptism after sin; b. not to do deadly sin after baptism; c. not to fall into venial sins after baptism, 594, 595/96—100; 3 species of p., a. solemn (to be put out of Holy Church in Lent or to do open penance); b. common (to go naked on pilgrimages, or barefoot); c. private (what men do for private sins for which they shrieve themselves privily), 595/102—106; likened to a tree, of which contrition is the root, from which springeth a stalk that beareth branches and leaves of confession, and fruit of satisfaction, 596/112—114; the tree of life, 596/127. See Contrition, Confession, Satisfaction
Penmarch, or Penmark, a town and headland on the coast of Brittany, 16 miles S.W. of Quimper, 502/801

People, the fickleness and unreliableness of the, 434, 35/995—1001

Perce. See Persia

Perceval, Sir, of Galles, the hero of the Romance of, alluded to, as a water-drinker, 198/2106

Percival, Sir. See Perceval

Percyuell, Sire. See Perceval

Perfection, no man should trust in his own, 672/959

"Peril is bothe fyr and tow tassemble," 336/89

Perkyn Reuelour, name of the apprentice in the Cook's Tale, 127/4371, 4387

Pernaso. See Parnassus

Perthoëus. See Perithoëus

Pers. See Persians

Perseverance, lack of [Lachesse], the sin of, 649/720; of it come poverty and destruction, 649/722

Persia, country in Asia, 264/3442

Persians, people of Persia, 263/3425; 264/3438

Pertelote. See Partlet

Pertinacity (a defending of follies), one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/404

Peter Alfonso. See Pedro Alfonso

Peter, name of the Merchant in Shipman's Tale, 174/1404

Peter, king of Cyprus (1352—1369), story of, in Monk's Tale, 268/3581—88

Peter, Saint, 20/697; 100/3486; 233/2691; 346/446; 373/1332; 388/1819; 550/665; 558/942; 947; 598/142; 609/287; 637/597; 655/783; 669/930; 675/988, 994

Peter the Cruel, of Spain, story of, in Monk's Tale, 268/3565—80

Petrak. See Petrarch

Petrarch, Francis, the Italian poet, 266/3515; 404/31; 439/1147; "in oure asshen olde is fyr yreke" (Son. 169), 111/3882

Petro. See Peter, king of Cyprus, and Peter the Cruel of Spain

Phædrus, the Latin fabulist; lib. 1. fab. 14, alluded to, 112/3904

Phanye, daughter of king Cræsus; expounds his dream, 280/3941—48
Pharao.  See Pharaoh
Pharaoh, king of Egypt in the time of Joseph, 291/4323; 623/443
Phasipha.  See Pasiphae
Phebus.  See Phœbus
Phidon, slain at a feast in Athens, his daughters drowned themselves to save their virginity (story from Hieronymus contra Jovinianum), 518/1369—1378
Philipenses, ad.  See Philippians
Philip, king of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great, 277/3846
Philippes, gen. sing.  See Philip
Philippians, Epistle of St. Paul to the, 637/598
Philisties.  See Philistines
Philistines, a people of the southern sea-coast of Palestine, who warred with the Israelites, 258/3238
Phillis.  See Phyllis
Philostrate; the name assumed by Arcite, 42/1428; 45/1558; 60/1728
Physiologus.  See Physiologus
Phiton.  See Python
Phitonissa (i. e. Pythoness).  See Witch of Endor
Phœbus, a name of Apollo, 279/3935; 280/3943; 580/105, 123, 130; 581/139, 156; 582/196, 200, 203; 583/238; 584/244, 249, 262; the sun, 43/1493; 129/11; 304/37; 470/2220; 480/48; 486/263; 509/1036, 1041, 1055; 510/1065, 1078; 515/1245.  See Apollo
Phyllis, daughter of king Sithon of Thrace, enamoured of Demophoön and changed into an almond tree (Ovid's Heroides, II.), 131/65
Physiologus de Naturis XII. Animalium of Theobaldus (a popular metrical Latin treatise, in the Middle Ages), alluded to, 295/4461
Picardie, a province of France, 3/86
Pickpurse, portrayed on the wall of the Temple of Mars, 58/1998
Piedmont, a region in North Italy, 404/44
Pierides, the daughters of Pierus, that contended with the Muses, and were changed into magpies (Ovid, Met. V.), 131/92
Piers, Daun, name of the Monk of the Canterbury Pilgrims, 281/3982
Piers Alfonce.  See Pedro Alfonso
Pigmalion.  See Pygmalion
Pikardye. *See* Picardie

Pilate, a probable allusion to the character of, in the Mysteries, "in Pilates voys he gan to cry," 89/3124

Pilgrims to Canterbury described, 2—21/43—714

Pillars of Hercules, the Straits of Gibraltar, 260/3308

Pipen in an yuy leef, 53/1838

Piramus. *See* Pyramus

Pirithoës, brother in arms and friend of Theseus, who obtains Arcite's release from prison, 35/1191—1208

Pirrus. *See* Pyrrhus

Pisa, a city of Italy, 269/3597, 3606; 270/3646

Pisces, sign of the Zodiac, 355/704; 486/273. *See* Fish

Pity; gentil herte is fulfild of pitee, 150/660; Lo pitee renneth soone in gentil herte, 51/1761; 463/1986; 492/479; largely taken, a remedy against avarice, 657/804—10

Pize. *See* Pisa

Placebo, vesper hymn for the dead (Ps. cxvi. 9), 395/2075; used in a general sense of a hymn or song to please, 639/617

Placebo, one of the *complacent* friends of January, in the Merchant's Tale, 448/1476, 1478; 450/1520; 452/1571; 458/1617

Plato, the Greek philosopher, 21/741; 573/1448, 1453, 1456, 1460, 1463; 583/207

Pleynadamour, Sir, Romance of, alluded to, 197/2090

Plowman, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 15, 16/529—41

Pluto, god of the infernal regions, 60/2082; 66/2299; 77/2685; 465/2038; that is Kyng of ffairye, 470/2227; 472/2311; 474/2354; 510/1075

Po, a river in Italy, 404/48

Poileys, *i. e.* Apulian; from Apulia, in Italy, celebrated for its horses. "Ther-with so horsly and so quyk of eye As it a gentil Poilleys courser were," 484/195

Polygamy, defended by Wife of Bath, 334/9 et seq.

Pompeii. *See* Pompey

Pompeus. *See* Pompey

Pompey (Cneius Pompeius), the Great, 136/199; 277/3870; 278/3878, 3883

Poo. *See* Po

Poperingue, a parish in the Marches of Calais, S. by W. from Ostende, 191/1910

Poperyng. *See* Poperingue
Portia (Porcia), the wife of Brutus; her wifely devotion, 520/1448—1450
Possessions, vain without virtue, 498/686, 687
Potiphar's wife, story of Joseph and, 664/880, 881
Powles, gen. s. Paul's. See St. Paul's
Poverty, personified and invoked by the Man of Law, 132/99—112; the evils of, 236, 237/2752—2762; praise of cheerful and honest, 368/1177—1209; in four things, in the world to come, against the riches of this world, 601, 602/192—199
Powles, gen. s. Paul's. See St. Paul's
Praise, popular, sometimes very false and brittle, 626/473
Prayer: Accidie or Sloth, an enemy to, 646/683; defined, 680/1039; its efficacy (St. Jerome quoted), 680/1047; "right as an hauk vp at a sours Vp springeth in-to their [the air], right so prayeres Of charitable and chaste bisy freres Maken hir sours to goddes eres two," 391/1938—1941
Prayers, Entreaties, Imprecations, Vows, etc.
Christ: for Ihesus loue, 106/3717; for Cristes sweto tree, 108/3767; for cristes peye, 117/4084; for Cristes saule, 122/4263; for cristes passion, 125/4327; crist that starf for our sauacion So yeue me grace hise heestes to ful-fille, 138/283, 284; Ihesu crist he with you alle, 139/318; thanked be cristes grace, 151/686; Now Ihesu Crist that of his myght may sende Ioye after wo, gouerne vs in his grace And kepe vs alle that been in this place, Amen, 166/1160—1162; for the lone of Crist pat for vs dyde, 323/658; for hym that harwed helle, 396/2107; for cristes passion, Gam. 14/477
Devil: the foule feend hym quelle, 551/705; the foule feend hym feeche, 565/1159; the deuel out of his skyn Hym terve (2, 4, 6, torne; 3, 5, torne,) I pray to god, for his falsheude, 568/1273, 1274
God: God spede you, 73/2558; God saue swich a lord, 73/2563; God shilde that he deyde sodeynly, 98/3427; for goddes banes, 117/4073; I pray to God so yeue me sorwe and care, 125/4335; god forbede, 125/4339; 207/2243; for the loure of god and of Seint Iohn, 129/18; god hym see, 134/156; I pray to god in honour hire susteeene, 134/160; almyghty god thee gyde, 137/245; heredy be goddes grace, 157/872; for wynd and weder almyghty God purchase, 157/873; God yeve him meschance, 159/914; Now god, quod he, and hise halwes brighte, So wisly on my saule as haue mercy, 163/1060, 1061; God shilde, 172/1356; god take on me vengeance, 173/1383; al so God me saue, 174/1416; God and seint Austyn spede yow and gyde, 175/1449; god shilde yow fro care, 175/1454; god vs sende Taillynge ynough vn-to our lyues ende, 180/1624; God shilde his cors fro shonde, 197/2093; for goddes
dignitee, 199/2109; god yelde yow, 219/1772; I vowe to god, 254/3122; I pray to god yewe him confusioun, 254/3133; God yewe me sorwe, 254/3140; so god yow blesse, 281/3975; god his soule blesse, 296/4485; god lat him neure thee, 300/4622; I make anow to goddes dignes bones, 324/695; god yow see, 325/715; God sawe yow pat boghte agayn mankynde, 326/766; god yewe his soule reste, 348/501; God leta his soule neurec come in helle, 348/504; god his soule blesse, 348/525; God haue hir soule, 349/530; for goddes loue, 364/1060; 365/1096; God sende hem soone verray pestilence, 370/1264; on goddes name, 371/1276; I pray to god sane thee, and seint, 379/1564; And God pat made after his ymage mankynde, saue and gyde vs alle and some, 381/1642, 1643; God saine yow alle, saue this cursed freire, 384/1707; Deus hic, 386/1770; god amende defautes, 388/1810; god be thanked of his loone, 389/1861; Te deum, 389/1866; god yow see, 398/2169; God yelde yow, 398/2177; god lat hym neuree thee, 399/2207; god leta thee neuree thee, 399/2232; god hym saue, 400/2265; I pray to god so yewe his soule reste, 404/30; as god forbeide, 407/136; God forbeede, 437/1075; God shilde that it sholde so bifalle, 442/1232; so God yow blesse, 442/1240; ther god his bones corse, 444/1303; god haue yow in his grace, 455/1688; God shilde vs alle from youre auyentayne, 458/1787; God graunte thee thyh hoomly to tespye, 458/1792; ffor goddes loue, 459/1814; 491/464; God be thyh helpe, 460/1874; God blesse vs and his mooder Seinte Marie, 475/2418; god yewe thee good chaunce, 493/679; for thilke god aboue, 517/1321; god yewe thee chance, 548/593; God it amende, 549/651; god yewe it harde grace, 550/665; god forbeide, 560/996; 562/1046; god forbeede, 562/1064; God kepe vs from his false dissymu- lynge, 568/1073; for goddes loue, 568/1176; Goddes blessyng and his moordres also And alle halwes have ye, 567/1243, 1244; ffor loue of God that for vs alle deyde, 570/1351; God it forbeede, 571/1375; God sende euer trewe man boote of his bale, 574/1481; god yewe thee sorwe, 576/15; on goddes name, 586/318; to do wel god sende yow his grace, 591/74; banked be goddes sonde, Gam. 13/419; god sende vs gode, Gam. 19/640; haue god my treuth, Gam. 20/678; haue god my lyfe, Gam. 21/714; So god zeue me good rest, Gam. 24/841; God bring vs to pe Ioye pat euer shal be, Gam. 26/902

Lord: He that is lord of fortune be thy steere, 144/448; Lord, wel come be thy lust and thy plesance, My lust I putte al in thy ordinance, 154/762, 763; lord, ay wel come be thy sonde, 156/826

Mary, the Virgin: cristes mooder blessed be she ay, 160/950; Ave Maria, 183/1698; O seinte Marie, benedicite, 193/1974; a Seinte Marie benedicite, 445/1337; for hir loue pat is of heuene queene, 473/2334; God blesse vs and his mooder Seinte Marie, 475/2418; Goddes blessyng and his moordres also And alle halwes have ye, 567/1243, 1244
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

Miscellaneous: Osanne, 150/642; for seinte charitee, 297/4510; 396/2119; for seint charite, 15/513; Grant mercie, 375/1403; 571/1380; Graunt merce, 388/1612; 437/1088; 565/1156; for seinte Trinitee, 388/1824; Er that he dy, sorwe haue he and shame, 551/709; yeue moote he cheuee, 567/1225; for Cokkes (i.e. Goddes) bones, 576/9; 590/29; foule moote thou falle, 577/40; Now faire yow befaule, 591/68; for Je gode rode, Gam. 21/707; euel moote thu the, Gam. 21/720; so mothe I wel the, Gam. 24/833

Preaching must be to willing ears, 206/2234

Presumption, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/403

Priam, king of Troy; his slaying of Pyrrhus (Aeneid, ii. 333, 334, 550-553) alluded to, 298/45474549

Priapus, son of Bacchus and Venus, god of gardens, 465/2034

Pride, one of the Seven Deadly Sins, 619-626/387-475; its remedy, 626, 627/476-483

Prioress, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 4, 5/118-164

Prioress’s Prologue, an invocation to God and the Virgin, to guide her song, 182, 183/1643-1677

Prioress’s Tale, of a Christian child killed by the Jews, 183-189/1678-1880

Prioress-Thopas Link; the Prioress’s tale finished, the Host addresses Chaucer, alludes to his personal appearance, and asks him to tell a tale of mirth, 190/1881-1901

Procrastination in well-doing, to be avoided, 248/2984, 2985

Prologue, General, to the Canterbury Tales; early spring described, when folk long to go on pilgrimages, 1/1-18; the meeting of the Canterbury pilgrims at the Tabard Inn, in Southwark, 1, 2/19-34; the character, degree, and array of the several pilgrims, described, 2-21/43-714; the poet asks that it be not ascribed to his ‘villainy,’ if he use language in keeping with his characters, 21/725-742; the supper, 22/747-750; the Host described, 22/751-757; his proposal for the entertainment of the pilgrims on the way to Canterbury and back, 22, 23/758-809; they pray the Host to be their governor, and judge of the tales, 23, 24/810-818; they start next morning, and draw lots at ‘the watering of St. Thomas,’ 24/822-841; the lot falls to the Knight to tell the first tale, 24/842-858

Prologue of the Monk’s Tale, 253-255/3079-3180. See Melibe-Monk Link

Prologue of the Nun’s Priest’s Tale, 281, 282/3957-4010. See Monk-Nun’s-Priest Link

Prologue of the Wife of Bath’s Tale, 334-58/1-856. See Wife of Bath’s Preamble
Prologue of the Friar’s Tale, 371/1265—1300. See Friar’s Prologue

Prologue of the Summoner’s Tale, 383, 4/1665—1708.
See Friar-Summoner Link

Prologue of the Clerk’s Tale, 403, 4/1—56. See Clerk’s Head-Link

Prologue of the Merchant’s Tale, 442/1213—44. See Clerk-Merchant-Link

Prologue of the Squire’s Tale, 476/2419—40. See Merchant’s End-Link

Prologue of the Franklin’s Tale. The Franklin alludes to the ancient Breton lays sung to instruments, “and oon of hem haue I in remembrance which I shal seyn with good wyl as I kan;” asks to be excused of his rude speech, as he has never learned rhetoric, nor slept on Mount Parnassus, nor learned Cicero, 500/709—28

Prologue of the Canon’s Yeoman’s Tale, 547—51/554—719. See Nun-Canon’s-Yeoman-Link

Prologue of the Manciple’s Tale, 576—9/1—104. See Manciple’s Head-Link

Prologue of the Pardoner’s Tale, 314—17/329—462. See Pardoner’s Preamble

Prologue of the Prioress’s Tale, an invocation to the Lord and to the Virgin, for help to tell her story, 182, 88/1643—77

Prologue of the Second Nun’s Tale; the S. N. discourses of idleness, to put us from which she will tell the glorious life and passion of St. Cecilia; invokes the Virgin to help her, 527—30/1—84

Prologue of the Parson’s Tale, 589—91/1—74. See Blank-Parson Link

Promise. See Biheste

Proserpina (Proserpyne), daughter of Ceres and wife of Pluto, 465/2039; 470/2229; 471/2264

Prosperity, not to be trusted, 256/3187

Protesilaus, leader of the Thessalians against Troy; his wife’s devotion alluded to, 520/1445—7

Protheselaus. See Protesilaus

Protholomee. See Ptolemy

Proverbs, Maxims, and Sententious Expressions in general:
15/500; 17/586; 19/652; 658; 21/742; 24/830; 34/1164, 1165, 1169; 35/1182; 44/1521—1524; 44, 45/1532, 1533; 47/1625, 1626; 51/1761; 53/1838; 61/2125; 70/2447—2449; 75/2636; 79/2777, 2778; 2759, 2760; 81/2841; 2847—2849; 87/3041, 3042; 90/3143; 91/3186; 93/3829, 3830; 95/3299, 3300; 97/3381, 3382; 3387; 3392, 3393; 39/3450; 101/3530; 102/3545, 3546; 103/3598; 3611—
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS TO

3613; 112/3903, 3904; 3912; 114/3961; 3983, 3984; 116/4026, 4027; 4054, 4055; 118/4129, 4130; 119/4134; 120/4181, 4182; 121/4210; 124/4320, 4321; 125/4331; 126/4333, 4334; 4335; 126/4337; 127/4395; 128/4397, 4398; 129/4406; 4410; 4415; 4417; Gam. 18/631; 20/672; 130/4575; 131/4587; 132/4597; 139/4676; 205/2220; 2226; 206/2234; 2238; 207/2244; 209/2276; 212/2325; 218/2405; 221/2454; 248/2984, 2985; 254/3146; 256/3187; 258/3219; 268/3351; 272/3415; 348/522, 523; 352/655; 354/732; 366/1128; 1170; 368/1183; 383/1674; 392/1968, 1969; 393/1980; 408/157, 158; 430/857; 438/324; 439/325; 440/410; 441/411; 445/416; 446/417; 448/1419, 1420; 451/1538; 463/1986; 466/2055; 467/2115; 484/203; 492/479; 491; 494/537; 495/593; 602, 603; 495, 496/608, 609; 502/773; 777, 778; 549/645, 646; 648, 649; 560/688, 689; 552/746, 747; 558, 559/962—965; 560/995; 572/1410; 1413; 576/5; 583/208; 587/350; 555

Porce. See Prussia

Prudence, the wife of Melibeus, in the Tale told by Chaucer, 201—252/2157—3078, passim; compared, by the Host, with his shrewish wife, 253, 254/3079—3113

Prussia, a country of Europe, 2/53

Ptolemy (Claudius Ptolemaeus), the celebrated astronomer and geographer, 339/182; 343/324; 401/2289

Puella, a figure in geomancy, signifying Mars retrograde, 59/2045

Purs is the Erecedekenes helle, 19/658

Pycardie. See Picardie

Pygmalion, an ancient artist who fell in love with a female statue he had made, and to which, at his petition, Venus gave life (Ovid. Met. x.), 303/14

Pykardie. See Picardie

Pyramus, the lover of Thisbe, 467/2128

Pyrrhus, son of Achilles, called also Neoptolemus; 139/288; his slaying of Priam alluded to, 298/4547

Python, the serpent slain by Apollo, 580/109, 128

Pyze See Pisa

Questio quid juris, 19/646

Qui cum patre, 386/1734; 685/1092

Rachel, the mother in the Prioress's Tale, spoken of as "This newe Rachel," referring to Matt. ii. 18, 187/1817
Radix malorum est Cupiditas, the theme of the Pardoner, 314/334; 316/426
Ralph, used as a general name, 373/1357
Ram, sign of the Zodiac, 1/8; 489/386. See Aries
Ram, the prize in wrestling, 16/548; Gam. 6/172, 184; 9/280
Raphael, the angel, 667/906
Rauf. See Ralph
Razis. See Rhasis
Rebekah (Rebecca, Rebekka, Rebekke), wife of Isaac, the patriarch, 210/2288; 446/1363; 455/1704
Redress; "gif a man in a point be ygreued, in another he sal be releued," 120/4181, 4182
Reeve, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 17, 18/587—622; his words to the drunken Miller, 90/3144—49; "a cherl," 91/3183; "the deuel made a reue for to preche," 112/3903
Reeve's Prologue; the company all make merry over the Miller's Tale, except the Reeve, who takes it as personal, "by-cause he was of carpenteris craft." He could retaliate, but from age was not inclined to speak ribaldry. The Host stops his sermoning about age, and tells him to go on with his story and not take up the time, as they are already near Deptford and Greenwich, and it is half way prime, 111, 112/3855—3920
Reeve's Tale of the Miller of Trumpington and the two Clerks, 113—124/3921—4324
Remedia Amoris, Ovid's, vv. 127, 128, quoted, 201/2167
Reproach. See Chiding
Revel and Truth, "they ben ful wrothe al day," 128/4397, 4398
Rhasis, a Spanish Arab physician of the 10th century, 13/432
Richard I. of England; his death bewailed in Geoffrey de Vinsauf's De Poetria Nova, 297/4537—4539; oaths "by Seint Richere," Gam. 5/137; 6/175; 11/357; 18/619
Richere, St. See Richard I.
Riches, good, when well gotten and well used, 236—241/2743—2837; "som folk wol ben wonnen for richesse And somme for strokes, and somme for gentillesse," 97/3381, 3382
Riot. See Insurrection and Theft
Ritus. See Rufus
Robert, Sir, used as a general name of a secular clergyman, 373/1356
Robin, the name of the Miller of the Canterbury Pilgrims, 89/3129
Robin, the Carpenter's boy in the Miller's Tale, 99/3466; 102/3555
Robyn. See Robin
Rochelle (Rochel), a seaport town of France, 321/571
Rochester, a city in Kent, England, on the route of the Canterbury Pilgrims, 254/3116
Rodogone, mirror of wifely chastity, 521/1457
Roger, Archbishop of Pisa (Ruggieri degli Ubaldini), enemy of Ugolino, 269/3606
Roger, the name of the Cook with the Canterbury Pilgrims, 125/4345, 4353, 4356. See Hodge
Roman, n. a native or citizen of Rome, 519/1404; pl. Romans, the Roman people, 139/291; 142/394; 202/2179; 298/4555; 519/1401; 531/121
Roman, adj. pertaining to Rome, 160/954; 267/3526, 3551; 352/642; The Romayn geestes, the Gesta Romanorium, 472/2284; the olde Romane Geestes, 165/1126
Romance of the Rose, alluded to, 465/2032
Romayn, Romayns. See Roman, Romans
Rome, a city of Italy, 14/465; 19/671; 20/689; 134/142, 145, 156; 139/290, 309; 160/966, 968; 161/974, 991; 166/1148, 1149; 266/3506; 267/3525, 3542; 271/3609; 277/3866, 3867; 278/3879, 3885; 298/4361; 353/673; 426/737; 485/231; 519/1406; 540/361; 560/975
Ronan, St., oaths by, 312/310; 313/320
Ronceval (Roncevaux), the place where Roland and the paladins of Charlemagne were slaughtered by the Saracens, and where a chapel was afterwards built, dedicated to the Virgin, and much resorted to by pilgrims; "a gentil Pardoner of Rounciuale," 19/670
Ronyan, Ronyon, St. See Ronan
Rosarie. See Rosarium Philosophorum
Rosarium Philosophorum, a treatise on alchemy, by Arnauld de Villeneuve, quoted: "Ther may no man Mercuric mortifie," 572/1,429
Rose, Romance of the, alluded to, 465/2032
Roucheestre. See Rochester
Rounciuale. See Ronceval
Rubens, a figure in geomancy, signifying Mars direct, 59/2045
Ruce. See Russia
Rufus, a Greek physician of Ephesus, of the age of Trajan, author of several medical treatises, 13/430
Russel, daun, name of the fox, in Nun's Priest's Tale, 297/4524
Russia (Russye), the easternmost country of Europe, 2/54; 479/10

Sacrifice to Diana, description of Emily's, in Knight's Tale, 65—8/2171—2366
Sacrilège, spiritual theft, 656, 7/801—3
St. Denis, a suburb of Paris, 168/1191; 169/1249; 170/1257; 176/1498; 177/1516
St. Paul's, church in London, 15/509; With Powles wyndow coruen on his shoos, 95/3318; oath “by Seint Poules belle,” 281/3970
Salomon. See Solomon
Saluce, Saluces. See Saluzzo
Saluzzo, a town of Italy, S. of Turin, 404/44; 405/63; 416/414, 420; 427/772, 775; 428/783
Samaritan, the woman of Samaria (John iv.), 334/16, 22
Sampson, Sampson. See Samson
Samson, or Sampsoun, 12th Judge of Israel; 320/554; 321/572; 672/655; I [Saturn] slow Sampsoun shakynge the piler, 71/2466; his death fore-written in the stars, 136/201; story of, in Monk's Tale, 257—9/3205—84; never drank wine, 320/555; his locks shorn and eyes put out, 354/721—3
Samuel, the Hebrew prophet, last judge of Israel, 321/585; 378/1510
Sapor I., king of Persia (A.D. 240—271), 266/3510
Sarah, or Sarai, the wife of the patriarch Abraham, 455/1704
Sarra, wife of Abraham. See Sarah
Sarray (anc. Sarai, mod. Tzarev), near Sarepta, “in the land of Tartarye,” 479/9; 480/46
Sataty. See Attalia
Satan, the spirit of evil, 107/3750; 141/365; 148/582, 598; 160/634; 185/1748; 256/3195; 378/1526; 382/1655; 383/1686; 1687, 1689; 666/895
Satisfaction, the 3d essential of Penitence, consists most generally in alms and bodily penance, 679—683/1029—80; the fruit of the tree of Penitence, 596/114
Sathan, Sathanas. See Satan
Saturday (Saterday), the seventh day of the week, 98/3399, 3419; 105/3665
Saturn, the god; 70/2443, 2450, 2453; 76/2668; 77/
2685; the planet of malign influence, 32/1088; 39/1328; enumerates to Venus the effects of his malign influence, 70, 71/2453—2478; a name for lead, 556/828

Saturnus. *See* Saturn

Sayne. *See* Seine

Scariot. *See* Judas Iscariot

Scholar, the true, characterized, 9/308; "the gretteste clerkes been noght wisest men," 116/4054

Scipio Africanus, the conqueror of the Carthaginians, 291/4314

Scithero. *See* Cicero

Scithia. *See* Scythia.

Scorners, compared to the foul toad, 641/636; parting-fellows with the devil, and adversaries of Christ, 641/637, 8

Scorning, a wicked sin, 641/635

Scot, the name of the Reeve's horse, 18/616; name of a horse, 378/1543

Scotland (Scotlond), country north of England, 152/718

Scots (Scottes), the people of Scotland, 148/580

Scriptural Allusions. *See* Bible

Scythia, "the regne of flemenye That whilom was ycleped Scithia, 26/86;"

Sea of Greece, the Mediterranean, 144/464

Second Nun's Tale, of St. Cecilia, 530—546/85—553

Secree of the Secretes, *Secreta Secretorum*, a treatise supposed to contain the sum of Aristotle's instructions to Alexander, 573/1447

Seine, a river in France, 514/1222

Seintes Legende of Cupide, Chaucer's Legende of Goode Women, referred to by the Man of Law, 130/61

Semiramis, the mythical queen of Assyria; the Sultaness of Syria addressed as "Semyrame the Secounde," 141/359

Sempronius Sophus, story of, in Valerius Maximus, vi. 3, of his forsaking his wife, alluded to, 352/647

Semyrame. *See* Semiramis

Seneca, Lucius Annaeus, the Roman philosopher and moralist, 129/25; 202/2174, 2182; 208/2261; 212/2317; 213/2337; 216/2375; 218/2416; 224/2510; 230/2627, 2638, 2640; 231/2645; 232/2678; 235/2721; 247/2965; 251/3049, 3056; 272/3693, 3705; 319/492; 367/1168; 368/1184; 393/2018; 446/1376; 450/1523; 452/1567; 586/345; 598/144, 145; 653/759

Senek, Senekke. *See* Seneca

Senior. *See* Senioris Zadith

Senses, five. *See* Five senses

Sententious expressions. *See* Proverbs

Septe. *See* Ceuta

Serapion, an Arabian physician, 11th cent., 13/432

Sergeant of Law, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 9, 10/309—30

Servants, the counsel of, to be eschewed, 216/2380; a riotous servant, well got rid of, 128/4409, 10

Seven deadly sins, The (Pride, Envy, Ire or Anger, Accidie or Sloth, Avarice or Covetousness, Gluttony, Lechery), treated of, 619—672/387957

Sheffield, a city of England, celebrated for its cutlery, 113/3933

Shepherd, a negligent, 306/101, 102

Shipman, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 12/388—410

Shipman’s Tale, of Dan John and the Merchant of St. Denis, 168—80/1191—1624

Shipman - Prioress Link; the Host compliments the Shipman, and calls “as curteisly as it had ben a mayde,” on the Prioress for a tale, 181/1625—1642

Shrews. *See* Wicked

Sickness, causeth often to do or say amiss, 502/781—3

Sidynghborne. *See* Sittingbourne, a town in Kent, 357/847

*Significavit*, a writ of excommunication, of which it is the initial word, 10/662

Similes. *See* Comparisons and Similes

Simkin, name of Miller in the Reeve’s Tale, 113/3941, 3945, 3947

Simon Magus, of Acts viii. 9—24, who wished to purchase the power of conferring the Holy Spirit, 655/783

Simon, St., oath by, 395/2094

Simon, the Pharisee (Luke vii. 40), 629/504

Simonials (from Simon Magus); “bothe he that selleth and he that beyeth thynges spirituels been cleped Symonyals,” 655/784

Simony, “cleped of Simon Magus” (Acts viii. 9—24), 372/1309; 655/783; different kinds of, 655/784—787; St. Damasus quoted, 655/788

Sin; “for to do synne is mannyssli, but certes for to perseuere longe in sinne is werk of the deuel,” 221 2454;
“forsaketh synne er synne yow forsake,” 311/236; what it is, according to St. Augustine, 672/959; sins, whence they spring (St. Paul quoted), 612/322; came thro’ Adam, 612/323; all are born sons of wrath and damnation, unless rescued by baptism, 613/335; how they grow (Moses quoted), 615, 616/350—357; venial and deadly, defined, 616/358—367; deadly, defined by St. Augustine, 617/368; divers small sins specified, on the authority of St. Augustine, 617, 618/371—381: no man can eschew all venial sins, but they can be restrained, by love to Christ, prayer, confession, good works, receiving the sacrament, holy water, almsdeed, etc., 618/382—386; the Seven Deadly Sins, their dependencies and species, and their remedies, 619—672/387—957; circumstances that aggravate sins, 672/960—978

Sinai, the mount from which the law was delivered to Moses, 390/1887

Sinon, the treacherous Greek who induced the Trojans to receive the wooden horse into their city, 484/209; apostrophised as type of treachery, 294/4418

Sirach, Jesus, son of. See Jesus

Sisera, probable allusion to the death of (Judges iv.), 58/2007

Sittingbourne, a town in Kent, between Rochester and Canterbury, on the route of the Pilgrims, 357/847

Sleep, the nurse of digestion, 488/347

Sleeping long, a nurse to lechery, 671/952

Sloth, one of the seven deadly sins. See Accidie and Idleness

Smiler, the (one who hides cruel purposes under a cloak of good will), portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/1999

Smylere. See Smiler

Socrates, the Athenian philosopher, 136/201; 354/728

Sol, the sun; a name for gold, 558/826; 573/1440

Soler halle, the, at Cantebregge, supposed to be Clare Hall, at Cambridge (See Tyrwhitt’s n. on v. 3988), 115/3990

Solomon, king of Israel, son and successor of David, 56/1942; 101/3529; 125/4339; 132/113; 203/2187, 2193; 206/2237; 207/2247; 209/2266, 2268; 210/2277; 211/2303; 214/2348, 2357; 215/2361, 2363, 2368; 216/2376, 2384; 223/2507; 229/2606; 232/2675; 235/2729, 2732; 236/2740; 237/2761, 2762; 238/2779, 2780; 240/2818, 2828; 242/2854, 2861; 243/2886; 244/2894, 2897, 2899, 2909; 245/2929; 246/2944; 335/35; 333/679; 403/6; 449/1483, 1487; 470/2242; 471/2277; 472/2292; 586/314, 344; characterized, 472/2292—2302; 596/119; 597/127; 599/155, 168; 604/227, 229; 634/566, 568; 639/613;
Somnolence ("sloggy slombrynge, which maketh a man be heuy and dul in body and in soule"), the sin of, and its remedy (Prov. viii. 17, quoted), 648/706--9

Somnorer. See Summoner

Somonour, Sompnour. See Summoner

Sunday. See Sunday

"Sooth play, quaad pley," as the flemyng seith, 126/4357

Sophie, daughter of Melibeus and his wife Prudence, in the Tale of Melibeus, 201—52/2157—3078

Sorrow, worldly, the sin of. See Worldly Sorrow

Sorrowful heart makes the bones dry, 203/2185

Southwark, a part of London south of the Thames, 1/20; 21/718; the ale of, 89/3140

Southwerk. See Southwark

Sovereignty, why ordained by God, 654/744

Sowdan of Surrye. See Sultan

Spain (Spaigne, Spayne), a country of Europe, 12/409; 268/3565; 321/565, 570

"Spoon, a ful long, bihoueth hire that shal ete with a feend," 495/602, 603

Spring, early, described, 1/1—11

Squire, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 3, 4/79—100

Squire’s Head-Link; the Host calls on the Squire to say somewhat of love, who replies that he will say as he can, 478/1—8

Squire’s Prologue, 476/2419—40. See Merchant’s End-Link

Squire’s Tale of Cambynskan, the Tartar king, and of the wondrous horse of brass, and the magic mirror and ring, 479—497/9—672

Squire-Franklin Link; the Franklin compliments the Squire, and praises "gentillesse"; the Host orders him to tell on his tale without more words, 498, 9/673—708

Stars, every man’s death written in the, 136/194—6

Statius, Publius Papinius, the Thebaïd of, referred to, 66/2294

Steed of brass, described, 482/115—131

Stewardships, oppressive, come of covetousness, 652/753.

Stilboû, "a wys embassadour . . . sent to Corynthe . . ."
ffro Lacidomye to maken hire Aliaunce [John of Salisbury calls him Chilon. Polycrat. lib. 1. c. 5. "Chilon Lacedemonius, jugendo societatis causâ missus Corinthum," etc. Tyrwhitt], 322/603

Stratford-atte-Bowe, 4/125; Stratford at Bow in Essex, north-east of London

Straw, Jack, an insurgent in Wat Tyler's insurrection, 299/4584

Strike while the iron is hot, 205/2226

Strother, "the valley of Langstroth, or Langstroth-dale, in the West Riding of Yorkshire," 115/4014

Stymphalides, a maiden loved by Aristoclidus, 519/1388

Suetonius Tranquillus, Caius, Roman biographer, author of the lives of the first twelve Caesars, 271/3655; 279/3910

Suffer, learn to, 502/777

Suicide, The, portrayed on the wall of the Temple of Mars, 58/2005, 6

Sulpitius Gallus, Caius or Cnæus. See Gallus

Sultan of Syria, 135/177, 186; 136/204; 137/239; 140/323; 141/354, 375, 382; 142/388, 395, 407; 143/436

Sultaness of Syria, 141/358, 372; 142/405; 143/414, 432; 160/958

Summoner, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 18, 19/62368; his brush with the Friar, 357/832—49

Summoner, a, characterized by the Friar, 371/1283—85; the Summoner of the Friar's Tale, 372—382/1321—1664

Summoner, a satire on the, Friar's Tale, 372—82/1301—1664

Summoner's Prologue, 383, 4/1665—1708. See Friar-Summoner-Link

Summoner's Tale, on the hypocritical rapacity of friars, and how a sick man bestowed a remarkable gift on a friar, to be equally distributed among the brethren of his convent, 385—401/1709—2294

Sunday, first day of the week, 63/2188, 2209; 98/3422; 176/1497

Surrien, Surryen. See Syrian

Surrye. See Syria

Suryens. See Syrians

Susanna (Susanne), wife of Joacim, accused of adultery, by the Elders (Apocryphal 'History of Susanna'), 150/639; 656/797

Swearing, condemned, 322, 3/629—59; an offspring of ire or anger, 636/587; Exod. xx. 7, and Matt. v. 34,
quoted, 636/583; various kinds of, lawful and unlawful, 636-8/587-604
Swelling of heart (rejoicing in harm done), one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/398
Sweton. See Suetonius
Swetonius. See Suetonius
Sword which a knight receives, when dubbed, significance of the, 653/767
Symkyn. See Simkin
Symon, St. See Simon
Symond. See Simkin
Symonyals. See Simonials
Symonye. See Simony
Symplicius Gallus. See Gallus, Caius or Cnæus Sulpitius
Synay. See Sinai
Synon. See Sinon
Syraβ. See Jesus, son of Sirach
Syria, a country of Asia, 134/134; 135/173, 177; 138/279; 142/387; 143/441; 160/955; 165/1108
Syrian, a native of Syria, 134/153; 143/435; 267/3529; Syrians, 142/394; 160/963
Syrian merchants described, 134/134-40
Tabard, the hostelry where the Canterbury Pilgrims assemble, in Southwark, 1/20; 21/719
Tables Tolletanes (Tabulae Toletanæ), the Alfonsine Tables—astronomical tables prepared by order of Alfonso X, of Castile and Leon, and published in 1252; first printed in 1483; so called from their being adapted to the city of Toledo; 516/1273
Talbot, name of a dog, 298/4573
Tale, the denouement of a, should not be too long delayed, 490/401—5
Tarquinius, Sextus (son of Tarquinius Superbus, the last King of Rome), the ravisher of Lucretia, 519/1407
Tarrying (tarditas) before turning to God, the sin of, 649/718; comes of an often false hope of long life, 649/719
Tars, cloth of; Tartarian cloth. See Dante’s Inf., c. xvii. 17; and note thereon in Longfellow’s Dante.
Tartar, adj., of Tartary, 486/266
Tartary, a country of Asia, 479/9
Tartarye. See Tartary
Tartre. See Tartar
Taurus, Sign of the Zodiac, 293/4384; 351/613; 461/1887

Tawr. See Taurus

Telephus, king of Mysia, who opposed the march of the Greeks towards Troy; was wounded by the spear of Achilles and afterwards cured by the rust therefrom, 485/238—40

Temple of Diana, representations on the walls of the, 59, 60/2051—88

Temple of Mars, described, 57/1981—94; symbolic representations on the wall of the, 57—9/1970—2040

Temptation, the story of the, 612, 13/325—30

Tercelet. See Tiercelet

Termagaunt, the name given in the old romances to the god of the Saracens; represented in the Miracle Plays and Moralities as a most violent character; oath by, 194/2000

Tertulian. See Tertullian

Tertullian (Quintus Septimius Florens Tertullianus), his De Pallio alluded to, 353/676

Tesbee. See Thisbe.

Teuta, the martial queen of the Illyrians, mirror of wifly chastity, 521/1453, 4

Thales, the Greek philosopher, allusion to the story told by Plato, of his falling into a ditch while star-gazing, 99/3457—60

Theatre, description of the, built by Theseus, 54, 5/1885 et seq.

Thebaid of Statius, referred to, 66/2294

Theban, native of Thebes, 81/2829; 82/2882; of Thebes, 520/1432, 1434; Thebanc knyghtes, 72/2515, 2526; Thebans, 54/1877; 73/2570; 75/2623; 85/2974

Thebes, city of ancient Greece, 28/933; 29/967, 983; 30/1002, 1019; 37/1283; 39/1331; 40/1355, 1383; 52/1793; 54/1880; 66/2294; 76/2658; 136/200; 139/289; 354/741; 355/746; 456/1721; 580/116

Theft, comes of Avarice, 656/795; of two kinds, bodily and spiritual, 656, 7/798—803

Theft and Riot, convertible terms, 127/4395

Thelopus. See Telephus

Theobaldus, his Physiologus de naturis XII. animalium alluded to, 295/4461 (See Wright's Reliq. Antiq., v. i. p. 208)

Theodomas, some famous trumpeter, in some Romantic history; perhaps, of Thebes, 456/1720

Theodora (Theodera), won to wife by Algarsif, son of Cambynskan, in Squire's Tale, 497/664
Theofraste.  See Theophrastus

Theophrastus, author of *Liber aureolus de nuptiis*, quoted by Jerome in his work *Contra Jovinianum*; 352/571; 444/1294, 5; 445/1310

Theseus, son of Ægeus, and king of Athens, slayer of the Minotaur, in Crete, and conqueror of the Amazons, 26—88/859—3108, *passim*; description of his banner, 29/975—80; his love of hunting, 48, 9/1673—82

Thessaly.  See Thessaly

Thessaly, country of ancient Greece, 277/3869

Thief; “ther is no theef with-oute a lowke that helpeth hym to wasten and to sowke,” 128/4415, 4416

Thief of venison, A, can keep a forest best of any man, 305/83; “a trewe wight and a theef thenken nat oon,” 494/537

Thimotheum, ad, the Epistle of St. Paul to Timothy, 651/739

Thisbe, the mistress of Pyramus, 130/63; 467/2128

Thobie.  See Tobit

Thomas, Daun, name by which the Host addresses the Monk (his name is Piers), 254/3120

Thomas, name of the Master of the house where the Limitour visits, in Summoner's Tale, 386/1770, 1772; 388/1815, 1832; 391/1918, 1942; 392/1954, 1966, 1985; 393/1992, 2000; 395/2089; 396/2107, 2112, 2119

Thomas, St., oaths by, 98/3425; 99/3461 (which St. Thomas is uncertain)

Thomas, St., of Ind, 352/666; 392/1980; 442/1230.  *See Mrs. Jameson's Sacred and Legendary Art*

Thomas, St., of Kent, oath by, 95/3291

Thomas, St., the watering of.  *See Watering of St. Thomas, a rill about 2 miles from the Tabard*

Thopas, Sir, The Rime of, a burlesque on the popular metrical romances of chivalry, 191—8/1902—2108

Thopas-Melibe Link; Chaucer, stopt by the Host, in his tale of Sir Thopas, for his “drasty rymyng,” offers to tell “a litel thyng in prose,” 199, 200/2109—56

Thrake, a country east of Macedonia; the regne of Trace, 47/1638; “the grete temple of Mars in Trace,” 57/1972; Mars addressed as its tutelary deity, 68/2374

Thralldom, comes first by sin, 652/757; name of, not known till Noah (Gen. ix. 25), 653/766

Thralls are God's people, 653/760

Thunder; “er pat thonder stynte, comth a reyn,” 354/732

Thymalao (MSS. 3, 6, Thimalao; MS. 5, Tymalao), son of queen Zenobia, 267/3535.  (In Boccaccio the name is Timolaus)
Thymothee. *See* Timotheus
Thymothee. *See* Timothy, St.
Tiber, river in Italy, 271/3666
Tiburce, Tiburces. *See* Tiburtius
Tiburtius, brother of St. Cecilia's husband, Valerian, in Second Nun's Tale, 535/242; 536/260, 265; 537/277, 289; 538/302, 307; 539/333, 348, 349, 354; 541/408
Tiercelet, the false, that loves the falcon, in the Squire's Tale, 493/504 *et seq.*
Time lost, cannot be recovered, 129/20—28
Timotheus, a general of King Antiochus (2 Maccabees, c. ix.), 275/3781
Timothy, St., Bishop of Ephesus, disciple of St. Paul, 590/32; 651/739
Titanos, Titan, a name for magnesia, 578/1454
Titus Livius, the Roman historian. *See* Livius Patavinus, Titus.
Tobias, son of Tobit, the writer of the apocryphal book of Tobit, 211/2307
Tobio. *See* Tobias
Tobit, the writer of the apocryphal book so called, 211/2307; 667/906
Tolletanes (MSS. 3—6, colletanes). *See* Tables Tolletanes
Tongue, to be guarded, 586, 7/315—62; "he that hath myssed ... may by no way clepe his word agayn; thing that is seyd is seyd, and forth it gooth," etc., 587/353—355
Tournament, preparations for a, 71, 2/2491—2522; described, 74—6/2599—2651
Tower (of London), alluded to as the mint where the noble was coined, 94/3256
Trace. *See* Thrace
Tragedy, defined by the Monk, 255/3163 — 72; the theme of tragedies, 280/3951—6
Tramyssene (MSS. 1, 2; MSS. 3—6, Tramessene), a Moorish kingdom (or city?) in Africa, 2/62
Treachery, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, "The tresoun of the mordrynge in the bedde," 58/2001
Trentals, thirty masses for souls in purgatory; their efficacy, according to a friar, 385/1724—1751
Tribulation in marriage, 339/173—83
Trinity, or the three persons of the godhead, explained by Saint Cecilia, 539/338—341
Troie. See Troy
Troilus, son of Priam, lover of Cressida, 494/548
Troilus and Cressida, Chaucer’s, alluded to, 684/1086
Trophæus (‘Ille vates Chaldeorum Tropheus’—Marg. note, Ellesmere and Hengwrt MSS.); “At bothe the worldes endes, seith Trophee, In stide of boundes he [Hercules] a pileer sette,” 260/3307, 8
Trophee. See Trophæus
Trotula (“I know of no Trotula but one, whose book Curandarum Aegritudinum Muliebrum ante, in, et post partum, is printed int. Medicos Antiquos, Ven. 1547.” Tyrwhitt.), alluded to, 358/677
Troy, the famous city besieged and destroyed by the Greeks, 81/2833; 139/288; 294/4419; 484/210; 487/306; 494/548; 520/1446; 560/975. See Ilion
Troye. See Troy
Trumpington, a parish of England, co. of Cambridge, 113/3921
Trumpyngton. See Trumpington
Truth of things, rather found in few folk that are wise than by great multitude of folk, 208/2259
Tullius. See Cicero
Tullius Hostilius, third king of Rome, 367/1166
Turkey (Turkye), an empire in Asia, comprising Asia Minor and adjacent countries, 3/66
Turnus, a king of the Rutuli, the rival of Æneas, by whom he was slain (Virgil’s Æneid, lib. vii—xii), 56/1945; 136/201
Tybre. See Tiber
Tyburee. See Tiburtius
Tyrant, The, portrayed on the wall of the Temple of Mars, 58/2015
Tzarev. See Sarry

Ugolino, count of Pisa, story of, in Monk’s Tale, from Dante’s Inf. c. xxxiii; 269, 70/3597–3652
Undevotion, or languor of soul, the sin of, 649/723
Unhardy is vnseely, 121/4210
Unity, a sovereign thing, 242/2868; “ech thyng that is oned in it selue Is moore strong than when it is toscatered,” 392/1968, 69
Urban I. (St.), Bishop of Rome, succeeded Calixtus, A.D. 222, martyred A.D. 230; 533/177, 179, 183, 189; 534/217; 538/305, 306, 309; 539/350; 546/541, 551
Valentine, St., a bishop or presbyter, beheaded A.D. 270, during the Claudian persecution at Rome; seint Valentynes day, 684/1086

Vain-glory, one of the twigs of Pride, 619/391; defined, 620/405

Valeria, daughter of the emperor Dioclesian? alluded to as a mirror of wifly chastity, 621/1456

Valerian, the husband of St. Cecilia, in Second Nun’s Tale, 531/129; 532/148; 533/162; 534/203, 204, 213; 535/218, 224, 232, 235; 536/253, 266; 538/306; 539/350; 541/403

Valerie, Valerius. See Epistola Valerii

Valerius Maximus, author of De Factis Dictisque Memorabilibus Libri IX.; stories in, alluded to, 279/3910; 347/460; 352/643; 367/165

Vengeance, the opinions of Melibeus and his wife concerning, 234/6/2711

Venice, a city of Italy, 404/51

Venus, the goddess of love and beauty, 32/1102, 1104; 39/1332; 55/1904; 56/1937; 64/2216; 65/2265; 68/2386; 70/2440; 71/2487; 74/2585; 76/2663; 255/3151; 297/4532; 351/604, 611, 618; 353/708; 456/1723; 458/1777; 463/1971; 486/272; 506/937; 516/1304; symbolic representations on the wall of the temple of, 55, 6/1918—46; description of the statue of, in her temple, 56, 7/1957—66; Palamon’s invocation to, 64, 5/2221 — 60; identified with Saxon goddess Friga, and alluded to as changeable and unlucky, 45/1536; meton., carnal intercourse, 347/464; carnal desire, 460/1875; love, 304/59; the planet, 353/697, 700, 704, 705; a name for copper, 555/829

Venuse. See Venice

Vernage, a sweet Italian wine (de agro Veronensi), 170/1261; 458/1807

Vesulus, Mount. See Monte Viso

Via Appia, the most celebrated of the ancient Roman roads, 583/172

Vinsauf, Geoffrey de. See Geoffrey de Vinsauf

Virgil (Publius Virgilius Maro), the Roman poet, 378/1519

Virgin, invocations to the, 182, 3/1657—77; 528—30/29—84. See Mary, the Virgin

Virginia, a beautiful Roman virgin whom her father slew to save from dishonour; subject of Doctor’s Tale, 303—11/1—286

Virginity, the Wife of Bath’s opinion of, 336/62 et seq.

Virginius, Lucius, a Roman centurion, father of Virginia, whom he slew to save from the designs of the decemvir
Appius Claudius, 303/2; 307/167; 308/175, 180, 191, 197, 203; 310/272.

Virtue of necessity, 87/3042; 495/593.


Viscounte, Barnabo. See Visconti.

Vitellio (or Vitello), Polish mathematician, 13th cent., author of *Perspective libri X.*, Nuremburg, 1533; 485/232.

Vitalion. See Vitellio.

Voragine. See Jacobus de V.

Vulcanus, the god of fire and the forge; alluded to as the husband of Venus, 64/2222; 68/2389.

Wades boot, 448/1424; Wade, according to the Edd., is the name of a hero of the northern mythology; but see *Notes and Queries*, 2nd S., Vol. V., p. 512, where ‘Wades boot’ is explained as “damages paid for breach of promise,” A. S. ‘wed,’ pledge, contract, and bót, compensation, reparation.

Wales, a country west of England; “To Walys fledde the Cristyanytee Of olde Britons,” 147/544.

Walter, lord of Saluzzo, husband of Griselda, 405/77; 416/421; 422/612; 423/631; 426/722; 434/986; 436/1044; 438/1107, III.

Walys. See Wales.


War, portrayed on the wall of the temple of Mars, 58/2002; its cost and consequences should be considered, before it is engaged in, 206/2228–32; great harms and perils in, 245/2920; an offspring of Ire, 634/563.

Ware, a town in England, 20/692; 125/4336.

Watching, an essential of bodily penance (Matt. xxvi. 41, quoted), 680/1048.

Watering of St. Thomas, The, a rill about two miles from the Tabard, where the Pilgrims halt and draw lots as to which shall tell the first tale, 24/826.

Wealth, vain without virtue, 498/686, 7.

Wed; “Men sholde wedden after hire estaat, ffor youthe and elde is often at debaat,” 93/3829, 30.

Wedlock, a Paradise in this world, 443/1264; apostrophized as to its blessedness, 446/1347–57; disparity in years should be avoided in, 93/3829, 30.

Weeping, moderate, should be allowed to one in grief, 202/2178; excessive, to be condemned, 202/2180.
Westlumbardy. See Lombardy

Wicked: "vn-to shrewes ioye it is and ese to haue hir felawes in peyne and diseas" 552/746, 747; "of every ordre som shrewes is pardee," 560/995

Widow, a poor, described, 283/4011—36

Wife, a young, described, 93, 94/3233—3270; if the wife have mastery, she is contrarious to her husband, 207/2249; never give wife, child, nor friend, power over thyself (Ecclus. xxxiii. 20), 207/2250; a chiding, angry wife; 355, 356/775—781; a good wife should not be watched, 581/148, 149; to take a wife, a glorious thing, 443/1268 et seq.; a wife, God's gift, and a great blessing to man, 445, 446/1311—1337; wife of the Host, described, 253, 254/3085—3112; 476/2426—2440; wife of the Merchant, described, 442/218—239; wife of Bath, description of, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 13, 14/445—476; how a wife should be subject to her husband, 669, 670/930—938

Wife of Bath's Preamble; gives her views of marriage and virginity, and relates her own marriage experiences, etc., 334—358/1—856

Wife of Bath's Tale; a knight of King Arthur, for an indignity done to a maid, is granted his life by the queen, if he can learn within a twelvemonth and a day, "what thyng is it that wommen moost desieren," 359—370/857—1264; "for the wyues loue of Bathe," 440/1170; her opinion of marriage alluded to and endorsed, 455/1685—1687

Wife-Friar Link, 371/1265—1300. See Friar's Prologue

Wives, men should not tell secrets to their, 259/3282—4; advice to, as to the stand they should take towards their husbands, 440, 41/1177—1212; good, alluded to (Rebekah, Judith, Abigail, Esther), 446/1362—74

Wilkyun, dim. of Will, name of a sheep, 346/432

William, the Conqueror, 10/324

Wine, lechery in, 318/484; a lecherous thing, 320/549; causes loss of mind and limbs, 394/2054, 55; causes to do or say amiss, 502/783

Wisdom; "of alle men his wysdom is the hyeste that reketh neuer who hath the world in hande," 343/326. 327

Wise man, excessive grief does not become a, 202/2171 et seq.; "sende the wise and sey no thyng," 103/3598

Witch of Endor, the story of the, in 1 Sam. xxviii. alluded to, 378/1510

Witness, false, comes of Avarice, 656/795; in what it consists, 656/796, 797

Woe, invoked as ever the successor of worldly bliss, 143/421—424, 426, 427; causeth often to do or say amiss, 502/782; "ioye after wo, and wo after gladnesse," 81/2841
Woman, mankind lost through, 156/842, 3: man's joy and all his bliss, the cock's translation of *Mulier est hominis confusion*, in Nun's Priest's Tale, 292/4356; the bad consequences of woman's counsels, 295/4446—56; a wise woman will strive to get love, 340/209, 10; man more reasonable than woman, 346/441; the loss of all mankind, 354/720; a chiding woman, 355/776, 7; the cruelty of an angry woman, 393/2001; has more humility and fidelity than man, 433/936, 8; must needs speak, or swell till her heart break, 472/2305, 6; woman taken in adultery (John viii. 3), comment on the story of, 205/2223.

Women, their sorrows from the loss of husbands, 80, 81/2822—26; born to be under man's governance, 138/286, 7; naturally desire six things in regard to their husbands, 173/1363—67; as counsellors, and dame Prudence's defence of, 207—11/2245—2301; what they desire, 285/4103—7; Paul's instruction as to the apparel of, 343/342, 5; the nature of their love, 344/371—8; natural gifts of, 345/401, 2; Wife of Bath's opinion of, 345/414; their contrariness, 348/515—24; what they most love, 361/925—48; desire sovereignty, 364/1038—41; their sleights and subtleties, 476/2421—25; naturally desire liberty, 501/768; examples of virtuous and chaste women, 518—21/1368—1456.

Won, How some folks are, 97/3381, 3382.

Wonder, the result of ignorance, 486/258—60.

Woodnesse. *See* Madness.

Words, "The wordes moote be cosyn to the dede," 21/742; "The word moot nede accorde with the dede," 583/203.

World, what is this? 79/2777; but a thoroughfare full of wo, 81/2847.

Worldly joy cannot last, 465/2055; 166/1133, 34.

Worldly sorrow, the sin of (2 Cor. vii. 10, quoted), 649/725; worketh the death of soul and body, 649/726, 7.

Wrongs, should be wreaked while they are fresh (strike while the iron's hot), advice of the young folk to Melibeus, 205/2226; "on euery wrong a man may nat be wreken," 502/784.

Xanthippe, wife of Socrates; his patient submission to her indignities, 354/727—32.

Xantippa. *See* Xanthippe.

Yeoman, description of the, among the Canterbury Pilgrims, 4/101—117.

Yeoman, a, described, 374/1380—83.

Yeoman attending the Canon who joins the Pilgrims on their way; his speeches to them, 548/587—93; 599—614.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS.

617; 549/618—626, 640—651; 550/657—62, 665—83; 551/703—19; his Preamble, 552—59/720—971; see Canon’s Yeoman’s Preamble; his Tale, 560—71/972—1481; see Canon’s Yeoman’s Tale

Ylion. See Ilion

Ynde. See Ind, India

Yorkshire, a county of England, 385/1709

Young people, the counsel of, to be eschewed, 217/2389

Youthe and elde is often at debaat, 93/3830

Ypermystra. See Hypermnestra

Ypocras. See Hippocreas and Hippocrates

Ypolita. See Hippolyta

Ypotis, Ypotys, Biblical Romance of, alluded to, 197/2088

Ypres, a town in Belgium, noted for its cloth-making, 13/ 448

Ysaak. See Isaac

Ysaye. See Isaiah

Ysidre, Seint. See Isidore of Seville

Ytaille. See Italy

Ymeneus. See Hymen

Yue, Yve, Seint. See I've

Zakarie. See Zechariah

Zanzis (MSS. 3, 6, Zepherus; 4, Zephirus; 5 Zephirus). See Zeuxis

Zechariah, the Hebrew Prophet, 623/434

Zenobia, queen of Palmyra; story of, in Monk’s Tale, 264—268/3437—3564

Zeuxis, the Greek painter, of Heraclea (B.C. 424—400), 303/16

Zodiac, signs of the. See Aries and Ram, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo and Lion, Capricorn, Pisces and Fish, Libra.
ADDITION TO THE INDEX.

Penitence, A Treatise on; the Parson's Tale, 592–685/75–1092; a full noble way to Christ, 593/80; defined by St. Ambrose, 594/84; by a certain doctor, 594/85; by the parson, 594/86; three actions of penitence, 1. baptism after sin, 594/96; 2. not to do deadly sin after baptism, 595/99; 3. not to fall into venial sins after baptism, 595/100; three species of penitence, 1. solemn (to be put out of Holy Church in Lent, or to do open penance), 2. common (to go naked on pilgrimages, or barefoot), 3. private (what men do for private sins for which they shrive them privily), 595/102-6; three essentials of penitence, contrition of heart, confession of mouth, and satisfaction, 595/108; penitence likened to a tree, 596/112; of which contrition is the root, from which springeth a stalk that beareth branches and leaves of confession, and fruit of satisfaction, 596/113. 14; penitence the tree of life, 596/127; four things to be understood about contrition, 1. what it is, 2. the causes that move a man thereto, 3. how to be contrite, 4. what it avaleth to the soul, 597/128; the six causes that ought to move a man to contrition, 1. remembrance of sin; 2. whose sins, is the thrill of sin; 3. dread of the day of doom, and the pains of hell, which are described; 4. the sorrowful remembrance of the good left undone, and the loss of the good works done ere falling into sin or while in sin; 5. remembrance of Christ's sufferings for our sins (St. Bernard, et al., quoted); 6. the hope of three things: forgiveness of sin, the gift of grace to do well, and the glory of heaven, 597–609/133–291; a man's contrition must be universal and total: for sins of thought, for whatever he hath desired against the law of God, for his wicked words as well as for his wicked deeds (St. Augustine quoted), 610-611/292–307; wherein availeth contrition: it sometimes delivereth a man from sin, destroys the prison of hell, cleanseth the soul, maketh him that was son of wrath to be son of grace, 611-612/308–315; confession, the second essential of penitence; defined, 612/318–320; whence sins spring (St. Paul quoted), 612/322; sin came through Adam, 612/323; the story of the
temptation, 612-13/325—330; all are born sons of wrath, and damnation everlasting, unless rescued by baptism, 613/335; concupiscence, the nourishing and occasion of sin, 614/338; St. Paul quoted; his own temptation, 614/342—4; St. Jerome's temptation, 614-15/345, 6; St. James the Apostle and St. John the Evangelist quoted, 615/348, 9; how sins grow (Moses quoted), 615-16/350—7; the two kinds of sin, venial and deadly, defined; venial sins give rise to deadly ones; "manye smale maken a greet;" a ship may be sunk by small drops of water entering through a little crevice, as well as by great waves; 616/358—367; deadly sin defined by St. Augustine, 617/368; divers small sins specified, on the authority of St. Augustine, 617, 18/371—381; no earthly man can eschew all venial sins; but they can be restrained, by love to Christ, by prayers, confession, good works, receiving the sacrament, holy water, almsdeed, etc., 618/382—6; the seven deadly sins, and their dependencies and species: Pride, 619—626/387—475; its remedy, 626-7/476—483; Envy, 627—630/484—514; its remedy, 630-31/515—531; Ire or Anger, 631—643/533—653; its remedy, 645—5/654—676; Accidie or Sloth, 645—9/677—727; its remedy, 650-51/728—738; Avarice, or Covetousness, 651—657/739—803; its remedy, 657—68/804—817; Gluttony, 658-69/818—830; its remedy, 660/831—5; Lechery, 660—8/836—914; its remedy, 668—672/915—956

Pride, its twigs: Disobedience, Boasting, Hypocrisy, Despite, Arrogance, Impudence, Swelling of Heart (rejoicing in harm done), Insolence, Elation, Impatience, Contumacy, Presumption, Irreverence, Pertinacity (a defending of follies), Vain-glory, Jangling, Persistence (a speaking too much before folk, clacking as a mill, and accounting not what others say), etc., 619-20/390—406, other private kinds of pride, 620/407, 8; two manners of pride: one within the heart, the other without, and the sign of the other, "as the gaye leefsel atte Tauerne is signe of the wyn that is in the Celer," 620-21/409—411; outside pride; shown in speech and countenance, in superfluous and expensive clothing (St. Gregory quoted), 621—22/412—421; in disgraceful scantiness of clothing, 622/422—429; in the outrageous array of women, 622/430; in horses, grooms, curious harness, saddles, etc. (Zechariah x. 5 quoted), 622-23/432—6; in maintaining a great household, 623/437—441; in table, not inviting the poor, in excess of meats and drinks, in great costliness of service, in minstrelsy, 624/444—447; the sources of pride: goods of nature, of fortune, of grace, 624/450—55; the folly of such pride, 625/457—463; the general signs of gentleness (Seneca quoted; bees choose for their king one that hath no sting), 625/464—469; popular praise sometimes very false and brittle, 626/473; Remedy against Pride: humility or meekness, 1. of heart, 2. of mouth, 3. of works, 626-27/476—483

Envy, defined by the Philosopher and St. Augustine,
627/484; comes from malice, 627/485; two kinds of malice: 1. hardness of heart, 2. opposition to known truth, 627/486, 7; two kinds of envy: 1. sorrow of other man's goodness and prosperity, 2. joy of other man's harm, 628/491, 2: whence comes backbiting or detraction (five kinds), 628/493–8; then grudging or murmuring, against God and man, 628, 9/499–501; grudging from avarice (Judas Iscariot cited as example), murmuring from pride, envy, 629/502–5; murmuring among servants, 629/506–8; grudging from ire or privy hate, 629/509; then come bitterness of heart, discord, scorning, accusing, malignity, 629-30/510–14. **Remedy against Envy:** 1. love of God and neighbour, 630/515, 16; how a man shall love his neighbour, 630/517–21; how in neighbour is included one's enemy, 630-31/521–23; how a man shall do three deeds of love against three deeds of hate (Matt. v. 44 quoted), 631/524–6; love, the medicine that casts out the venom of envy from man's heart, 631/531

**Anger, or Ire,** 631–43/533–653; the sin defined by St. Augustine; by the Philosopher; 632/535–6; is of two kinds: good and wicked. 632/538; good, when directed against wrong-doing (Ps. iv. 5 quoted), 632/539, 40; wicked ire, of two kinds: sudden, without consent of reason (venial sin), 632/541, 2; and premeditated (deadly sin, and the devil's furnace), 632/543–6; three shrews that forge in this furnace: Pride, Envy, and Contumely, 633/554–6; the offsprings of ire: hate, war, and wrong, and manslaughter spiritual and bodily, 634/562–4; six kinds of spiritual manslaughter (but three given), 1. by hate (1 John iii. 15 quoted), 2. by backbiting, 3. in giving wickened counsel, by fraud (Prov. iii. 27, 28 quoted), 634/562–9; bodily manslaughter: slaying with the tongue, giving order or counsel to slay a man, 634/570; manslaughter in deed, four kinds (seven named), 1. by law, as when a judge condemns a man to death; 2. in self-defence; 3. by accident (shooting an arrow or casting a stone); 4. when a woman by negligence overlies her child; 5. by preventing conception, inducing abortion, etc.; 6. when a woman kills her child after birth, for shame; 7. when a man by lechery or blows destroys a foetus, 635/571–9; many more sins, in word, thought, or deed that come from ire or anger, 635–43/580–653; 1. imputing to God one's own guilt, or despising God and his saints, as hazarders do, or treating irreverently the sacrament of the altar; 2. attrry anger, when one is admonished in his shrift to abandon his sins, and makes angry false excuses; 3. swearing (Exod. xx. 7, Matt. v. 34 quoted), and thus dismembering Christ; various kinds of swearing, lawful and unlawful, enumerated; 4. lying (various kinds enumerated); 5. flattery; how flatterers are the devil's nurses, his enchanter, and chaplains; 6. cursing that comes of irous heart (simile of a bird returning to its nest); 7. chiding and Reproach; "they unsew the seams of friendship in a man's heart;" they spring from evil heart (Matt. xii. 34, Prov. xv. 4, xvii. 1, xxvii. 15, St. Augustine, 2 Tim. ii. 24, Coloss.
iii. 18 quoted); 8. scorning (scorners compared to the foul toad); 9. giving wicked counsel (as Aithithophel to Absalom, 2 Sam. xvii.); 10. sowing and making discord (John xvii. 21); 11. double tongue; 12. betraying of counsel; 13. menace; 14. idle words; 15. jangling (Eccles. v. 2 and a Philosopher quoted); 16. japing; japers are the devil's apes (Ephes. v. 4 quoted), 635—43/580—653. Remedy against Anger, Mansuetude, that is, debonairity and patience, or sufferance (forbearance), 643/654; the actions of these virtues (St. Jerome and the Philosopher, and Matt. v. 9 quoted), 643/655; four kinds of grievances and their remedies: 1. wicked words, 2. damage or loss of property, 3. harm of body, 4. excessive labour—all of which Christ endured patiently, and we should follow his example, 644/663—9; story of a philosopher who had lost his patience, and was rebuked by a child he was about to punish, 644/670—73; obedience comes of patience; when obedience is perfect, 645/674—76.

Accidie or Sloth, the sin of, 645—9/677—727; its action (St. Augustine and Eccles. ix. 10 quoted), 645/677—80; an enemy to the three states of man: 1. innocence, 2. prayer, 3. grace, 645-6/681—4; also, to one's livelihood, 646/685; like to the state of those in hell, 646/686; its consequences: 1. sloth (Prov. xxi. 25 quoted) , and its remedy (St. Bernard quoted); 2. dread to begin good works (St. Gregory quoted); 3. wanhope, or despair of God's mercy (St. Augustine, Luke xv. 7, 22, xxiii. 42, 43 quoted); 4. somnolence (Prov. viii. 17 quoted); 5. negligence, and 6. recklessness; the remedy for these two sins; 7. idleness, the gate of all harms; an idle man like to a place without walls—the devils may enter on every side; 8. tarditas, as when a man tarries too much ere he will turn to God; 9. lachesse, as when one begins any good work and gives it up for a slight cause; 10. coldness, that freezes all the heart of a man; 11. undevotion, or languor of soul; 12. worldly sorrow (?2 Cor. vii. 10); 646—9/683—727. Remedy against Accidie: fortitude or strength, 650/728—30; many kinds of fortitude: 1. magnanimity, or greatness of spirit; 2. faith and hope in God and in his saints; 3. assurance; 4. magnificence, the doing of great works of goodness; 5. constancy, or stability of spirit, 650/731—7.

Avarice and Covetousness, 651—7/739—803; the root of all harms (1 Tim. vi. 10), 651/739; St. Augustine's definition of, 651/741; difference between Avarice and Covetousness (Ephes. v. 5 quoted), 651/744—8; between an idolater and an avaricious man (Exod. xx. 3, 4 quoted), 652/749—51; of covetousness come hard and oppressive lordships and stewardships (St. Augustine, De Civitate, lib. ix., Gen. ix. 25—27), 652/752—5; thraldom comes first by sin, 652/757; Seneca quoted, 653/759; thralls are God's people, 653/760; lords and churls have a common origin and destiny, 653/761, 2; every sinful man is a churl to sin; lords should have the love rather than the dread of their churls, 653/763; there must be high and low, but
extortions from underlings are to be condemned, 653/764; the name of thraldom not known till Noah (Gen. ix 25), 653/766; of those that pillage and do extortions in Holy Church; the significance of the sword a knight receives when dubbed; those that strangle the sheep of Christ are the devil's wolves, according to St. Augustine, 653/767—9; why sovereignty was ordained, 654/744; lords that are like wolves, shall receive by the same measure as they have measured to the poor (Matt. vii. 1), 654/755—6; of deceit between merchant and merchant; merchandise, bodily and spiritual, 654/777; bodily merchandise, when lawful and when cursed and damnable, 654/778—30; spiritual merchandise, or simony, defined, 654/781, 2; simony named from Simon Magus (Acts viii. 18—23), 655/783; different kinds of simony, 655/784—7; St. Damasus quoted, 655/788: hasardry, or games of chance, 656/793, 4; other offspring of Avarice: lying, theft, false witness, false oaths, and sacrilege, 656/795—803. Remedy against Avarice: misericord (mercy, compassion) and pity, largely taken; and why? kinds of misericord, 657/804—10; reasonable largesse (liberality), 658/811, 12; but one should avoid foolish and vain liberality, 658/813—17

Gluttony, 658/9/818—30; defined, 658/818: corrupted all the world (Philippians iii. 18, 19 quoted), 658—9/819-20; of the kinds of gluttony: 1. drunkenness, "the horrible sepulture of man's reason," 2. troubled spirit, resulting therefrom, 3. voracious eating, 4. distempered bodily humours from excessive eating, 5. forgetfulness from too much drinking, 659/822—27; or, according to St. Gregory, 1. eating before proper time, 2. getting too delicate food or drink, 3. taking too much, 4. making great ado in preparation of food, 5. eating too greedily; these are the five fingers of the devil's hand, 659/828—30. Remedy against Gluttony: abstinence; which is not meritorious if practised only for health of body, and not for virtue (St. Augustine quoted), 660/831, 2; the fellows of abstinence: 1. temperance, that observes a mean, 2. shame, 3. suffisance, that avoids rich meats and drinks, 4. measure, or moderation, 5. soberness, 6. sparing, not sitting long and comfortably at table, 660/833—35

Lechery (luxuria), 660—68/836—914; the punishments of this sin, in the old law, 660/838; the world drowned therefor, and five cities burnt, 660/839; adultery, and the punishment of adulterers (Rev. xxi. 8 quoted), 661/840-41; a horrible thing to break the sacrament of marriage (Matt. xix. 5 quoted); what the sacrament betokens, 661/842-3 (Exod. xx. 17, St. Augustine, Matt. v. 28 quoted); the consequences of the sin; 661/844—51; the five fingers of the devil's other hand: 1. foolish looking (compared to the basilisk); 2. wicked touching (Prov. vi. 27—29, Eccles. xii. 13, xiii. 1 quoted); 3. foul words; 4. kissing; how a man should love his wife; 5. the stinking deed of lechery, 662/852—62; to what end the fiend uses his five fingers of lechery, 663/863, 4; different kinds of lechery: fornication

CHAUCER'S CANT. TALES: ELLES. MS. PARSON'S TALE.
between unmarried people (Gal. v. 19—21); taking a maid's maidenhead; the consequences, 665/865—72; adultery defined, 664/874; the many sins it includes: breaking of faith; stealing a woman's body from her husband and her soul from Christ (story of Joseph and Potiphar's wife, Gen. xxxix. 7—9), breaking God's commandment and defouling Christ, 664/875—84; of whoresmongers and harlots, 665/885; 6; adultery, set in the decalogue between theft and murder, as it partakes of both sins, 665/887—9; the sin most heinous when committed by those in holy orders who are under the vow of chastity, 665/891—4; such are the sons of Belial; are like a free bull in a field; will have the raw flesh of folk's wives and daughters, 666/897—901; adultery may be between man and wife, when they copulate for fleshly delight only, 667/904—6; copulation with kinsfolk, spiritual (god-children) or fleshly (blood relations); the abominable unmentionable sin; pollution, from bodily languor, infirmity, surfeit of meat and drink, evil thoughts; 667/907—14. Remedy against Lechery: 668—72/915—57; chastity and continence, 1. in marriage, 668/916; marriage a great sacrament, established by God; true effect of marriage; marriage figured between Christ and Holy Church, 668/918—22; how a man should bear him towards his wife (Éphes. v. 25 quoted), 669/925—29; how a wife should be subject to her husband (1 Pet. iii. 1—7, St. Jerome and St. Gregory quoted), 669, 70/930—38; a man and wife may copulate for three things: 1. begetting of children, 2. to pay, each to other, the debt of their bodies, 3. to avoid lechery; 670/939—42; unrestrained indulgence for mere sensual delight is deadly sin, 670/943; 2. chastity in widowhood, 671/944—47; 3. in virginity, 671/948—50; other remedies against lechery; avoiding such things as give occasion thereto, as ease, eating and drinking, lying too long abed, the company of tempters, 671/951—53; let no man trust in his own perfection, unless he be stronger than Samson, holier than Daniel, wiser than Solomon, 672/955. What sin is, according to St. Augustine, 672/959; circumstances that aggravate sins: 1. who it is that sins; 2. the nature of sin, and extent of its continuance; 3. the place (house, field, church, church-yard, etc.); 4. by what enticement or fellowship; 5. the number of times it was committed; 6. by what temptation, and whether the temptation rested with the wrong-doer or came from others; 7. how it was done and all the accompanying circumstances, 672—4/960—78.

Confession, the second essential of penitence; conditions of a true and profitable confession: 1. sorrowful bitterness of heart (1s. xxviii. 15 quoted), 674/982—3; of which there are five signs: shamefastness (St. Augustine quoted, and the Publican instance); humility (1 Pet. v. 6) in heart and outward sign; the shrift should be full of tears (St. Peter instanced, Matt. xxvi. 75); no standing back for shame (the Magdalen, Luke vii. 37); obedience to the penance imposed, 674, 5/984—97; 2. true confession must be
attended to speedily, and must include four things: the shrift must be well considered, the number, greatness, and duration of the sins well comprehended, the sinner must be contrite, and steadfastly resolve to shun occasions of sin, 675-6/998—1005; 3. One must shrive him of all his sins, to one man, 676/1006. True shrift involves certain conditions: it must be of free will, and not constrained; both the sinner and the priest must be truly in the faith of Holy Church; one must not despair of Christ's mercy; must accuse himself of his own trespass, and not another; must not, for humility's sake, confess to sins not committed (St. Augustine quoted); must confess by his own mouth, and not by letter; must not paint confession with fair words, but speak plainly, however foul and horrible the sin; must shrive him to a discreet priest, and not for vain-glory, but for the fear of Christ, and health of the soul; must not run to a priest to tell him lightly his sin, 677-8/1012—24; to be shriven more than once for the same sin, the greater merit (St. Augustine quoted); one should be houseled at least once a year, 678/1026-27.

Satisfaction, the third essential of Penitence, 679—83/1029—80; consists most generally in alms and bodily penance, 679/1029; three kinds of alms: contrition of heart; pity for one's neighbour's defaults; giving good spiritual counsel, and providing for the wants of the body (food, clothing, shelter, etc.), 679/1030—33; alms should be done timely, and in secret, if possible, 679/1034.

Bodily Penance consists, 1. in prayers; prayers defined; the pater noster characterized; it comprises in itself all good prayers; how it must be said, 679, 80/1038—44; 2. in watchful (Matt. xxvi. 41); fasting (?) consists in three things: forbearing meat and drink, worldly jollity, deadly sin, 680-81/1048-49; 3. fasting; to which appertain four things: liberality to the poor, spiritual gladness of heart at fasting, seasonable and moderate eating, 681/1050-51; virtuous, teachings, or discipline, by word, writing, or example; cheerful wearing of hair shirts, etc. (Col. iii. 12); knocking the breast, scourging, kneelings, tribulations, patient endurance of maladies and losses, 681/1052—56; things that disturb penance: dread, shame, hope, and want of hope or despair, 681/1057; the remedies against these, 682-3/1058—75; the fruit of penance, 683/1076—80; the author takes his leave, and asks mercy and forgiveness of his sins, especially of those committed in his books, 684-5/1081—92.

People, the fickleness and unreliableness of the, 434-35/995—1001.

Perce. See Persia.

PeryueHF, Sire. See Perceval.
Luke v. 10: 388/1820; x. 7: 392/1973; x. 18: 141/366
John ii. 1—11: 334/11; iv. 18: 334/17—19: viii. 3: 205/2223; xi. 35: 202/2177; xii. 6: 378/1351
Romans vii. 3: 335/49; xi. 33: 228/2596; xii. 15: 202/2179; xii. 17: 222/2482; xii. 19: 231/2650; xiii. 4: 230/2630, 2631; xiii. 12: 540/385
1 Corinthians vi. 13: 319/522, 523; vii. 6: 336/65; vii. 9: 335/52; x. 13: 382/1661
2 Corinthians i. 12: 240/2824; xi. 14: 376/1465; iii. 6: 387/1794; iv. 17: 234/2700
Ephesians v. 18: 318/484; v. 22—33: 338/160; v. 25, 28, 29: 447/1384
Philippians iii. 18, 19: 320/530—533
1 Timothy ii. 9: 343/341—345; iv. 7: 590/33, 34: v. 6: 320/547, 548; vi. 8: 390/1881; vi. 10: 212/2320; vi. 10: 250/3030
2 Timothy iii. 16: 300/4631, 4632; iv. 7: 541/387, 388
James i. 4: 234/2707; i. 5: 212/2309; i. 13: 430/1153; i. 22: 391/1037; ii. 13: 251/3059; ii. 17: 529/64
1 Peter ii. 21—23: 233/2692—2694
1 John i. 9: 252/3075—3077
Revelations viii. 1—3: 145/491—494; xii.: 141/366
CHAUCEER'S

Comparisons and Similes, Metaphors, and Proverbs, Maxims, &c.,

IN HIS

"CANTERBURY TALES,"

COLLECTED BY

PROF. HIRAM CORSON, LL.D.,
CORNELL UNIVERSITY.

I. COMPARISONS AND SIMILES.

N.B.—The references are to the paging and lines of the Six-Text edition.

And of his port as meek as is a mayde, 3/69
With lokkes crulle as they were leyd in presse, 3/81
Embrouded was he, as it were a meede
Al ful of fresshe floures whyte and reede, 3/89, 90
He was as fresshi as in [is, 2—6] the Monthe of May, 3/92
He slepte nameore than dooth a nyghtyngale, 3/98
hir eyen greye as glas, 5/152
And whan he rood, men myghte his brydel heere
Gynglen in a whistlynge wynd als cleere
And eek as loude as dooth þe chapel belle, 5/169—171
His heed was balled þat shoon as any glas,
And eek his face as it hadde been enoynt, 6/198, 199
Hise eyen stepe and rollynge in his heed,
That stemed as a forneys of a leed, 6/201, 202
He was nat pale as a forpyned goost, 6/205
His palfrey was as broun as is a berye, 6/207
His nekke whit was as the flour delys,
Ther to he strong was as a Champion, 7/238, 239
And rage he koude as it were right a whelpe 8/257
ELLES.

INDEX.
Of double worstede was his semycope
That rounded as a belle out of the presse, 8/262, 263
Hise eyen twynkled in his heed aright!
As doon the sterres in the frosty nyght!, 8/267, 268
And leene was his hors as is a rake, 9/287
Whit was his heed as is a dayesye, 10/332
An Anlaas and a gipser al of silk!
Heeng at his girdel, whit as morne Milk, 11/357, 358
His berd as any soe or fox was reed,
And ther to brood as though it were a spade, 16/552, 553
Vp on the eope right of his nose he had
A werte, and ther on stood a toft of hers
Reed as the brustles of a sowes erys, 16/554—556
His mouth as gret was as a gret forneys, 16/559
His tope was doked lyk a preest biforn,
sful longe were his legges and ful lene,
Ylyk a staf, ther was no calf ysene, 17/590—592
They were adrad of hym as of the deeth, 18/605
Tukked he was as is a frere aboute, 18/621
As hoot he was and lecherous as a spar we,
Thanne wolde he speke and crie as he were wood, 18/636
Swiche glarynge eyen hadde he as an hare, 20/684
A voys he hadde as smal as hath a goot, 20/688
ffor trevely comforte, ne myrthe is noon
To ride by the weye doumb as the stoon, 22/773, 774
Emelye fat fairer was to sene
Than is the lylie vpon his stalke grene
And fressfier than the May with flourues newe, 31/1035—
1037
We stryuen as dide the houndes for the boon,
They foughte al day and yet hir part was noon,
Ther cam a kyte whil they weren so wrothe
And baar awaye the boon bitwixe hem bothe, 34, 35/1177—
1180
dronke is as a Mous, 37/1261
he lyk was to biholde
The Boxtree or the Asshen dede and colde, 38/1301, 1302
pale as Assfien colde, 40/1364
a Courser startlynge as the fir, 44/1502
Now vp, now doun, as boket in a welle, 45/1533
As fiers as leon, 46/1598
To chaungen gan the colour in hir face,
Right as the hunters in the regne of Trace,
That stondeth at the gappe with the spere,
When hunted is the leon and the bere,
And hereth hym come russhyng in the greues
And breketh bothe bowes and the leuens,
And thynketh "heere cometh my mortal enemy,
With oute faile he moot be deed or I;
for outhere I moot slee me at the gappe,
Or he moot slee me if pat me myshappe," 47, 48/1637—
1646
Thou mygfiest wene that this Palamon
In his fightyng were [as] a wood leon,
And as a cruel Tigre was Arcite;
As wilde bores gone they to smyte,
That frothen whit as foom, for Ire wood, 48/1655—1659
He was war of Arcite and Palamon,
(That foughten breme as it were bores two ;)
The brighte swerdes wenten to and fro
So hidously, that with the leeste strook
It semed as it wolde fille an ooke, 49/1698—1702
[to fighten] As it were in a lystes roially, 50/1713
She woot namoore of al this hoote fare,
By god, than woot a Cokkow of an hare, 52/1809, 1810
And lik a grifphon, looked he aboute, 61/2133
Cam ridynge lyk the god of Armes Mars, 62/2159
And as a leon he his lookyng caste, 62/2171
His voys was as a trompe thondrynge, 62/2174
An Egle tame as any lilye whyt, 63/2178
As fayn as fowel is of the brighte sonne, 70/2437
Arrayed right as he were a god in Trone, 72/2529
Ther nas no Tygre in the vale of Galgopheyre.
Whan pat hir whelpe is stole, whan it is lite.
So cruel on the hunte, as is Arcite,
ffor Ielous herte, vpom this Palamon,
Ne in Belmarye, ther nys so fel leon
That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,
Ne of his praye desireth so the blood,
As Palamon to slee his foo Arcite, 75/2626—2633
So greet a wepyng was ther noon certayn
Whan Ector was ybroght, al fresshi yslayn,
To Troye, 81/2831—2833
She was ful moore blisful on to see,  
Than is the newe perceionette tree,  
And softer than the wolle is of a wether, \[3247—3249\]

fful brighter was the shynyng of hir hewe,  
Than in the tour the noble yforged newe,  
But of hir song it was as loude and yerne,  
As any swalwe sittynge on a berne;  
Ther to she koude skippe and make game,  
As any kyde or calf folwynge his dame;  
Hir mouth was sweete, as bragot or the Meeth,  
Or hoor of Apples leyd in hey or heeth,  
As dooth the white doke after hire drake, \[3575, 3576\]

Hir forheed shoon as bright as any day,  
Crul was his heer, and as the gold it shoon,  
And strouted as a ffanne large and brode, \[3314, 3315\]

This Nicholas sat capyng euere vp-rignte  
As he had kiked on the newe moone, \[3444, 3445\]

This Nicholas sat ay as stille as stoon, \[3472\]

Thanne shal I swymme as myrie, I vndertake,  
That half so greet was neuere Noees flood, \[3517, 3518\]

I haue swich loue longynge,  
That lik a turtel trewe is my moornynge, \[3705, 3706\]

Dirk was the nyght as pich or as the cole, \[3731\]

And weepe as dooth a child that is ybete, \[3759\]

This Nicholas anon leet fle a fart  
As greet as it had been a thonder dent, \[3806, 3807\]

Myn herte is mowled also as myne heris,  
But if I fare as dooth an Openers, \[3870, 3871\]

As eny pecok' he was proud and gay, \[3926\]

As piled as au Ape was his skullle, \[3935\]
And she was proud and peert as is a pye, 113/3950
She was as digne as water in a dich, 114/3964
  eyen greye as glas, 114/3974
Wery and weet as beest is in the reyn, 118/4107
As any Iay she light was and Iolyf, 119/4154
  as an hors, he snorteth in his sleepe, 119/4163
And I lye as a draf sek in my bed, 121/4206
They walwe as doon two pigges in a poke, 123/4278
Gaillard he was as Goldfynch in the shawe,
Broun as a berye, a propre short fel[a]we, 127/4367, 4368
He was as ful of loue and paramour
As is the hyve ful of hony sweete, 127/4372, 4373
lokid as a wild lyon, Gam. 4/125
stood stille as stoon, Gam. 8/263
stille as any stone, Gam. 12/395
as stille as any stone, Gam. 13/423
—the tyme wasteth nyght and day,
And steleth from vs, what pryuely slepynge
And what thurgh necligence in our wakynge,
As dooth the streem that turneth neuere agayn,
Descendynge fro the montaigne in to playn, 129/20—24
O serpent vnder femynynytee,
Lik to the serpent depe in helle ybounde, 141/360, 361
ffor as the lomb toward his deeth is broght,
So stant this Innocent before the kyng, 149/617, 618
he sleep as a swyn, 153/745
thou ianglest as a Iay, 154/774
And she for sorwe as doumb stant as a tree,
So was hir herte shet in hir distresse,
When she remembreth his vnkyndenesse, 163/1055—1057
But was as glad ther-of, as fowl of day, 169/1228
  they were as glad of his comyng;
As fowl is fayn whan pat the sonne vp riseth, 169/1240,
  1241
As in a fourme sit a wery hare,
Were al forstraught with houndes grete and smale, 171/
  1294, 1295
And forth she gooth, as Iolif as a pye, 174/1399
And hoom he gooth, murie as a Papeiay, 178/1559
Whit was his face, as Payndemayn,  
Hise lippes, rede as rose,  
His rode is lyk scarlet in grayn, 191/1915—1917  
His heer, his berf, was lyk saffroun, 191/1920  
And sweete as is the Brembul flour,  
That bereth the rede hepe, 192/1936, 1937  
Yet listeth, lordes, to my tale,  
Murier than the Nightyngale, 195/2023, 2024  
As whit as is a lilye flour, 196/2057  
His brydel as the sonne shoon,  
Or as the moone light, 196/2069, 2070  
And forth vpon his wey he rood,  
Salomon seith That right as Motthes in the shepes flees  
anoyeth to the clothes, and the smale wormes to the tree,  
right so anoyeth sorwe to the herte, 203/2187  
right as maladies been cured by hir contraries, right so shul men warishe were by vengeance (advice of the physicians to Melibeus), 204/2207  
lit a wilde leof fool-hardy, 253/3106  
Thou art nat lyk a penantr or a goostr, 254/3124  
And lik an Egles fetheres, wax his heres, 262/3365  
Hise nayles lyk a briddes clawes weree, 262/3366  
His voys was murier than the murie Orgon  
On Messedayes that in the chirche gom ;  
Wel sikerer was his crowyng in his logge,  
Than is a Clokke or an abbey Orlogge, 284/4041—4044  
His Coomb was redder than the fyn coral,  
And battailed as it were a castel wal ;  
His byle was blak, and as the leet it shoon,  
Lyk Asure were hise legges and his toon ;  
Hise nayles whiter than the lylye flour,  
And lyk the burned gold was his colour, 284/4049—4054  
He looketh as it were a grym leoun, 293/4369  
and Chauntecleer so free,  
Soong murier than the Mermayde in the see, 295/4459, 4460  
They yolloden as feendes doon in helle, 298/4579  
And ryme it out as round as gooth a belle, 314/331  
And Est and West, vp-on the peple I bekke,  
As dooth a dowue, sittyenge on a berne, 316/396, 397
Thou [O dronke man] fallest as it were a styked swyn
as dronken as a Mous, 341/246
as a spaynel, she wol on hym lepe, 341/267
ffor thogh he looked as a wood leon, 346/429
I koude walke as fressh as is a rose, 346/448
ioly as a pye, 346/456
And singe, ywis, as any nyghtyngale, 347/458
ffor al so siker as cold engendreth hayl,
A likerous mouth moste han a likerous tayl, 347/465, 466
Stibourne I was, as is a Leonesse, 352/637
A fair womman, but she be chaast also,
Is lyk a gold ryng in a sowes nose, 356/784, 785
And he vp stirte, as dooth a wood leoun, 356/794
As thikke as motes in the sonne beem, 359/868.

And al day after hidde hym as an Owle, 365/1081
Ye faren lyk a man had lost his wit, 365/1095
wood as an hare, 372/1327
Hadde alwey bawdes redy to his hond?
As any hauk to lure in Engelond, 373/1339, 1340
ffor in this world nys dogge for the bowe,
That kan an hurt deer from an hool knowe,
Bet than this Somnour knew a sly leechour,
Or an Auowtier or a paramour, 374/1369—1372
The Cartere smoot and cryde as he were wood, 378/1542
lyk an Aspen leef he quook for Ire, 383/1667
And now hath Sathanas, seith he, a tayl
Broder than of a Carryk is the sayl, 383/1687, 1688
Right so as bees out swarmen from an hyue,
Out of the deueles ers ther gonne dryue
Twenty thousand freres in a route, 384/1693—1695
chirteth as a sparwe, 387/1804
He is as angry as a pissemyle, 388/1825
He groneth lyk oure boor litti in oure sty, 388/1829
ffat as a whale, and walkynge as a swan, 391/1930
Al vinolent1 as Botel in the spence, 391/1931
Therfore, right as an haukt vp at a sour, 
Vp springeth in-to their, right so prayeres
Of charitable and chaste busy freres
Maken hir sour to goddes eres two, 391/1938—1941

as Iust as is a squyre, 395/2090

The frere vp stirte, as dooth a wood leoun, 397/2152
He looked as it were a wilde boor, 397/2160
with bely stif and toght As any Tabour, 400/2268
Ye ryde as coy and stille as dooth a mayde,
Were newe spoused, sittyng at the bord, 403/2, 3

In crepeth age alwey, as stille as stoon, 407/121
And as a lamb, she sitteth meke and stille, 420/538

O stormy peple, vnsad and euere vntrewe,
Ay vndiscreet* and chaungynge as a vane,
Delityng euere in rumbul that is newe,
ffor, lyk the moone, ay wexe ye and wane, 434/995—99
And she ay sad and constant as a wal, 436/1047

strong* as is a greet Camaille, 441/1196
Beth egre as is a Tygre yond in Ynde, 441/1199
Ay clappeth as a Mille, 441/1200
couche as doth a quaille, 441/1206
Be ay of chiere as light as leef on lynde, 441/1211
That passen as a shadwe vpon a wal, 445/1315

Myn herte and alle my lymes been as grene
As laurer thurgi the yeer is for to sene, 449/1465, 1466

Thanne shal youre soule vp to heuene skippe
Swifter than dooth an Arwe out of the bowe, 455/1672,

she was lyk the brighte morwe of May, 457/1748
Lyk to the naddre in bosom sly vntrewe, 458/1786

as stille as a ston, 459/1818
With thilke brustles of his berd vnsofte,
Lyk to the skyn of houndfyssh, sharpe as brere, 459/1824,

ful of Iargon as a flekked pye, 459/1848
As fresh as is the brighte someres day, 461/1896
an herte as hard as any stone, 463/1990
    he gooth as lowe
As eure dide a dogge for the bowe, 464/2013, 2014
O sodeyn hape, O thou fortune Instable,
Lyk to the Scorpion, so deceyuable,
That flatrest with thyn heed, whan thou wolt synge,
Thy tayl is deeth, thurgh thyn enuenymynge,
O monstre that so subtilly kanst peynte
Thy yiftes vnder hewe of stidefastnesse,
    That thou deceyuest bothe moore and lesse, 465/2057—2064
Soul as the turtle pat lost hath hire make, 466/2080
Tho gh thou myghtest se as fer as shippes saille, 467/2108
as blynd as is a stoon, 468/2156
as lewed as gees, 471/2275
Syngeth ful murier than the Papeiay, 473/2322
And vp he yaf a roryng and a cry,
As dooth the moolde tham the child shal dye, 474/2364,
    2365
But doutelees, as trewe as any steel,
    I haue a wyf, though pat she poure be, 476/2426, 2427
They murmureden as dooth a swarm of Been, 484/204
Vp riseth fresshe Canacee hir selue,
    As rody and bright as dooth the yonge sonne,
That in the Ram is foure degrees vp ronne, 489/384—386
a tree fordryed as whit as chalk, 490/409
And littli aswowne deed, and lyk a stoon, 492/474
Rigfit as a serpent hit hym vnder floures
Til he may seen his tyme for to byte, 493/512, 513
As in a toumbe is al the faire aboue
    And vnder is the corps, 493/518, 519
That fressher was and Iolyer of array,
    As to my doom, than is the Monthe of May, 506/927, 928
langwissheth as a furye dooth in helle, 507/950
lyk a bisy bee, 534/195
fful lyk a fiers leoun, 534/198
As meke as euere was any lamb, 534/199
euery mortal mannes power nys
But lyke a bladdre ful of wynd, ywys, 542/438, 439
He hadde ay priked lik as he were wood, 547/576
But it was ioye for to seen hym swete:
His forheed dropped as a stillatorie
Were ful of Plantayne and of Paritorie, 547/579—581
flor al the world, they stykenken as a groot, 556/886
Al though this thyng mishapped haue, as now,
Another tyme it may be wil ynow.
Vs moste putteoure good in auenture;
A Marchaut, pardee, may nat ay endure,
Trusteth me wil, in his prosperitee;
Somtyme his good is drenched in the see,
And somtyme comth it sauf vn-to the londe, 558/944—950
Was neuere brid gladder agayn the day,
JSTe nyghtyngale in the seson of May,
They mowe wel chiteren as fat doon Joyes (jays), 572/1397
Ye been as boold as is Bayard'the blynde,
That blondreth forkutte and forkerueth
An Arm atwo, my deere sone, right so
A tonge kutteth frendshepe al atwo, 586/340—342
soothly, ther is no thyng that sauoureth so wel to a child
as the Milk of his Norice, ne no thyng' moore abhomynable than thilke Milk' when it is medled with oother mete, right' so the synful man that loueth his synne, hym semeth that it is to him most sweete of any,thyng'; but fro that tyme that he loueth sadlyoure lord Thesu crist', and desireth the lif perdurable, ther nys to him no thyng' moore abhomynable, 596/122—124
as dooth the hound' pat retorneth to eten his spewyng.
597/138
ye be roten in youre synne as a beast in his dong', 598/139
right as a sougie wrotheth in euerich ordure, so wrotheth hire [a fair woman's] beautee in the stynkynge ordure of synne, 599/157
right as doop a derk' clowde bitwixe vs and the sonne,
601/185
A greet' wawe of the see comth som tyme with so greet' a violence that it drencheth the shipe. And the same harm dooth som tyme the smale dropes of water that
entren thurgh a litel creuace in to the thurrok; and in
the botme of the shipe, if men be so negligent that they
ne descharge hem nat by tyme. And therefore, al though
ther be a difference bitwixe thise tuo causes of drench-
ynge, algates the shipe is dreynf, 616/363, 364

Looke how mueche that a drope of water that falleth in a
fourneys ful of fyr anoyeth or greueth, so mueche anoyeth
a venial synne vn-to a man that is perfitt in the loue of
Ihesu crist, 618/384

right as the gaye leefsel atte Tauerne is signe of the wyn
that is in the Celer, 621/411

the buttokes of hem faren as it were the hyndre part of a
she Ape in the fulle of the Moone, 622/424

Looke how that fir of smale gleedes that been almoost dede
vnder ashen, wollen quike agayn when they been
touched with brymstoon; right so Ire wol eueremo
quyken agayn when it is touched by the pride that is
couered in mannnes herte, 633/548

Ther is a maner tree, as seith sein Ysidre, that whau
men maken fir of thilke tree, and couere the coles of it with
Ashen, soothly the fir of it wol lasten al a yeer or
moore. And right so fareth it of rancour: whan it is
ones conceyued in the hertes of som men, certein it
wol lasten perauenture from oon Estre day vnto another
Estre day and moore, 633/551, 552

And ofte tyme swich cursynge wrongfully retorneth agayn
to hym pat curseth, as a bryd that retorneth agayn to
his owene nest, 639/620

He [who tarries ere he will turn to God] is lyk to hym
that falleth in the dych, and wol nat arise, 649/718

He is lyk to an hors that seketh rather to drynken drouy
or trouble water than for to drynken water of the clere
welle, 658/816

Certes they been lyk to houndes: for an hound, whan he
comth by the Roser, or by othere beautes, though he
may nat pisse, yet wol he heue vp his leg and make a
contenance to pisse, 662/858

right as he som tyme is cause of alle damages that beestes
don in the feeld, that breketh the hegge or the closure,
thurgh which he destroyeth that may nat been restoored,
668/870

namoore may maydenhede be restoored than an Arm that
is smyten fro the body may retournge agayn to wexe,
663/871
a fouler thefte than for to breke a chirche and stele the chalice, 664/879
bordels . . . that mowe be likned to a commune gonge where as men purgen hire ordre, 665/885
hem thynketh they been free and han no luge, namoore than hath a free bole that taketh which Cow that hym liketh in the town, 666/898
right as a free bole is ynough for al a toun, right so is a wikked preest' corruptio̱n ynough for al a parisshe, or for al a contree, 666/899
lyk to houndes that taken no kepe to kynrede, 667/907
though that hooly writ' speke of horrible synne, certes hooly writ' may nat been defouled, namoore than the sonne that' shyneth on the Mixne, 667/911
Soothly, a whit wal, al-though it ne brenne noght fully by stikynge of a candele, yet is the wal blak of the leyt', 672/954

METAPHORS.
Vp roos oure hoost' and was oure aller cok', 24/823
I haue, god woot, a large feeld to ere,
And wayke been the Oxen in my Plough, 26/886, 887
Thanked be fortune, and hire false wheel, 27/925
—of Chivalrie the flour, 29/982
My lookyng' is the fader of pestilence [said by Saturn], 71/2469
this foule priso̱n of this lyf, 87/3061
vnbokeled is the male, 89/3115
He hadde moore tow on his distaf
Than Gereys knew, 108/3774, 3775
And Absolon hath kist' hir nether eye, 110/3852
With bleryng' of a proud Milleres eye, 111/3865
Gras tyme is doon, my fodder is now forage, 111/3868
floure gleedes han we, whiche I shal deuyse,
Avauntyng', liyng', Anger, Coueitise :
Thise foure sparkles longen vn to eeld, 111/3883-3885
And yet ik haue alwey a Coltes tooth, 112/3887
As many a yeer as it is passed henne
Syn that my tappe of lif bigan to renne,
Sfor sikerly, whan I was bore, anon
Deeth drough the tappe of lyf and leet it gon,
And euer sithe hath so the tappe yronne
Til that almoost al empty is the tonne,
The streem of lyf now droppeth on the chymbe, 112/3889
—3895
So was hir ioly whistle wel y-wet, 119/4155
Your bagges been nat fild with ambes as,
But with sys cynk, that renneth for youre chaunce, 132/124, 125
Humblesse hath slayn in hire al tirannye;
She is Mirour of alle curteisie,
Hir herte is verry chambre of hoolynesse,
Hir hand Ministre of fredam for almesse, 135/165—168
welle of vices, 140/323
roote of Iniquitee, 141/358
nest of every vice, 141/364
foot hoot, 143/438
Me list nat of the chaf, or of the stree,
Maken so long a tale, as of the corn, 152/701, 702
In hym triste I, and in his moorder deere,
That is to me, my seyl and eek my steere, 156/833
hauen of refut, brighte sterre of day (said of the Virgin),
157/852
of cristen folk the flour, 164/1090
Now longe moote thou sails by the cost, 181/1626
This gemme of chastite, this Emeraude,
And eek of martirdom the Ruby bright, 187/1799, 1800
This welle of mercy, Cristes mooder sweete, 188/1846
Confession is neighbor to Innocence, 247/2966
It is a gentil pasture ther thow goost, 254/3123
He [was] of knyght hod and of fredom, flour, 276/3832
Thy sys ffortune hath turned in-to Aas, 277/3851
But I ne kan nat bulte it to the bren, 294/4430
Taketh the fruyt, and lat the chaf be stille, 300/4633
the olde daunce, 305/75
ffor dronkenesse is verray sepulture
Of mannes wit, and his discretion, 320/558, 559
And on the ground, which is my moodres gate,
I knokke with my staf, bothe erly and late,
And seye, leue mooer, leet me In, 325/729—731
Crist, that of perfeccion is well, 337/107
the flour of myn age, 337/113
Nay, thou shalt drynken of another tonne
Er that I go, shal sauoure wors than Ale, 339/170, 171
Than maystow chese wheither thou wolt sippe
Of that tonne that I shal abroche, 339/176, 177
The flour is goon, ther is namoore to telle,
The bren as I best kan, now moste I selle, 347/477, 478
I made hym of the same wode (i. e. jealousy) a croce,
347/484
in his owene grece, I made hym frye
ffor Angre, and for verray Ialousye, 347/487, 488
I was his purgatorie, 347/489
When pat his shoo ful bitterly hym wrong, 347/492
I holde a Mouses herte nat worth a leek,
That hath but oon hole for to sterte to, 350/572, 573
But yet I hadde alwey a coltes tooth,
Gat tothed I was, and that bicam me weel,
I hadde the prente of seint Venus seel, 351/602—604
Hoold nat the deuues knyf ay at thyn herte, 395/2091
I am vnder youre yerde, 403/22
flour of wyfly pacience, 432/919
ffor if pat they were put to swiche assayes,
The gold of him hath now so badde alayes
With bras, pat thogh the coyne be fair at eye,
It wolde rather breste atwo than plye, 440/1166—1169
Youre herte hangeth on a ioly pyn, 450/1516
But I woot best where wryngeth me my sho, 451/1553
O perilous fyr, that in the bedstraw bredeth, 458/1783
Night with his Mantel, pat is derk and rude,
Gan ouerspede the Hemysperie aboute, 458/1798, 1799
welle of alle gentillesse, 493/505
With outen coppe, he drank al his penance, 506/942
Thow welle of mercy (the Virgin), 528/37
... blered is myn eye, 552/730
... roote of alle trecherie, 562/1069
fox, used for a sly person, 563/1080
roote of alle cursednesse, 569/1301
the preest he made his Ape, 569/1313
wol ye Iusten atte f Ian, 577/42
Another day he wole, perauenture,
Reclayme thee, and brynge thee to lure, 578/71, 72
blered is thyn eye, 584/252
Vnbokele and shewe vs what is in thy Male, 590/26
Why sholde I sowen draf out of my fest,
When I may sowen whete, if pat me lest', 590/35, 36
Thilke manere of folk been the flyes that folwen the hony,
or elles the houndes that folwen the careyne, 623/441
Thanne stant Enuye and holdeth the hoote Iren vpon the
herte of man, with a peire of longe toonges, of long' rancour, 633/555
filatereres been the deueles norices, that norissen his
children with Milk of losengerie, 639/613

PROVERBS, MAXIMS, AND SENTENTIOUS
EXPRESSIONS IN GENERAL.

Wel koude he [the Miller] stelen corn and tollen thries,
And yet he hadde a thombe of gold, pardee, 16/563
And this figure he added eek ther to,
That if gold ruste, what shal Iren doo? 15/500
And yet this manciple sette hir aller cappe, 17/586
And priuely a fyneh eek koude he pulle, 19/652
Purs is the Erecedekenes helle, seyde he, 19/658
The wordes mroote be cosyn to the dede, 21/742
If euen song and morwe song accorde, 24/830
who shal yeue a louere any lawe?
Lone is a gretter lawe, 34/1164,1165. Boethius, De
Consol. III. 12:
' Quis legem det amantibus?
Major lex amor est sibi.
A man moot nedes loue, maugree his heed, 34/1169
Ech man for hym self, 35/1182
But sooth is seyd, go sithen many yeres,
That feeld hath eyen, and the wode hath eeres, 44/1521, 1522

It is ful fair a man to bere hym euene,
ffor al day meeteth men at vnset steuene, 44/1523, 1524

Now in the crope, now doun in the breres,
Now vp, now doun, as boket in a welle, 44, 45/1532, 1533

loue ne lordshipe
Wol noghf hir thankes haue, no felaweshipe, 47/1625, 1626

ffor pitee renneth soone in gentil herte, 51/1761

He moot [e] pipen in an yuy leef, 53/1838

Ther is no newe gyse that it nas old, 61/2125

As sooth is seyd, elde has greet auantage;
In elde is bothe wysdom and vsage;
Men may the olde at renne and noght at rede, 70/2447—2449

Som tyme an ende ther is of every dede, 75/2636

And certeiny, ther Nature wol nat wirche,
ffare wel Phisik, go ber the man to chirche, 79/2759, 2760

What is this world, what asketh men to haue,
Now with his loue, now in his colde graue, 79/2777, 2778

Ioye after wo, and wo after gladnesse, 81/2841

This world nys but a thurghfare ful of wo,
And we been pilgrymes, passynge to and fro;
Deeth is an ende of enery worldes soore, 81/2847—2849

Thanne is it wysdom, as it thynketh me,
To maken vertu of necessitee, 87/3041, 3042

How that a clerk hath set the wightes cappe, 90/3143

men shal nat maken ernest of game, 91/3186

Men sholde wedden after hire estaat,
ffor youthe and elde is often at debaat, 93/3829, 3830

A clerk hadde litherly biset his whyle,
But if he koude a Carpenter bigyle, 95/3299, 3300

ffor som folk wol ben wonnen for richesse,
And somme for strokes, and somme for gentilesse, 97/3381, 3382

blowe the bukses horn, 97/3387
alwey the nye slye
Makesthe ferre leeue to be looth, 97/3392, 3393
A man woot litel what hym shal bityde, 99/3450
Werk al by conseil, and thou shalt nat rewe, 101/3530
of an hastif thyng
Men may nat preche, or maken tariyng 102/3545, 3546
Men seyn thus, sende the wise, and sey no thyng, 103/3598
Lo, which a greet thyng is Affeccion!
Men may dyen of ymagnacioun,
So depe may impression be take, 103/3611—3613
The deuel made a Reue for to preche,
And of a Soutere, Shipman or a leche, 112/3903, 3904.
sette his howue, 112/3911
ffor leeneful is with force force of showue (vim vi repellere),
112/3912
ffor falous folk ben perilous enermo, 114/3961
ffor hooly chirches good moot been despended
On hooly chirches blood, that is descended, 114/3983, 3984
nede has na peer,
Hym boes serue hym selue, that has na swayn, 116/4026, 4027
The gretteste clerkes been nought wisest men,
As whilom to the wolf thus spak the mare, 116/4054, 4055
Yet kan a Millere make a clerkes berd?
(i.e. cheat him; Fr. faire la barbe, to shave), 117/4096
Man sal taa of twa thynges,
Slyk as he fyndes, or taa slyk as he brynges, 118/4129, 4130
With empty hand men may none haukes tulle, 119/4134
That gif a man in a point be ygreued,
That in another he sal be releued, 120/4181, 4182
Vnhardy is vnseely, thus men sayth, 121/4210
Hym thar nat wene wel that yuele dooth,
A gylour shal hym self bigyled be, 124/4320, 4321
Ne bryngge nat every man in-to thy hous, (Ecclus. xi. 29),
125/4331
Wel oghte a man, anysed for to be,
Whom that he broghte in-to his pryuetee, 125/4333, 4334
ELLES. INDEX.
A man may seye ful sooth, in game and pleye, 125/4355
But sooth pley quaad pley, as the flemynge seith, 126/4357
thefte and Riot they been convertible, 127/4395
Reuel and trouthe, as in a lowe degree,
They been ful wrothe al day, as men may see, 128/4397,
4398
Wel bet is roten Appul out of hoord,
Than þat it rotie al the remenaunt; So faireth it by a riotous seruaunt;
It is wel lasse harm to lete hym pace
Than he shende alle the seruantz in the place, 128/4406—
4410
ther is no theef with-oute a lowke,
That helpeth hym to wasten and to sowke,
Of that he brybe kan, or borwe may, 128/4415—4417
After bale cometh bote, þorgh goddes meight, Gam. 18/631
He moste nedes walke in felde þat may not walke in towne, Gam. 20/672
ffor losse of catel may recovered be,
But losse of tyme shendeth vs, quod he (Seneca), 129/27, 28
Biheste is dette, 130/41
ffor swich lawe as a man yeueth another wight,
He sholde hym seluen vsen it by right, 130/43, 44
in the sterres, clerer than is glas,
Is writen, god woot, who so koude it rede,
The deeth of euery man, withouten drede, 136/194—196
O sodeyn wo, that euere art successour,
To worldly bliss, spreyned with bitternesse;
The ende of the ioye of oure worldly labour,
Wo occupieth the fyn of oure gladnesse, 143/421—424
Vp on thy glade day, haue in thy mynde
The vnwar wo or harm þat comth bihynde, 143/426, 427
gentil herte is fulfild of pitee, 150/660
The fruyt of euery tale, is for to seye, 152/706
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,
Ther is no conseil hyd, with outen doute, 154/776, 777
Ioye of this world for tyme wol nat abyde,
flro day to nyght it changeth as the tyde, 166/1133, 1134
Who lyued euere in swich delit o day,
That hym ne moeued outhere conscience,
Or Ære, or talent, or som kynnes affray,
Enuye, or pride, or passion, or offence? 166/1135—1138
Mordre wol out, 186/1766
He that soone deemeth, soone shal repente, 205/2220
whil that Iren is hoot, men sholden smyte, 205/2226
he that precheth to hem that listen nat heeren his wordes,
his sermon hem anioieth, 206/2234
good conseil wanteth whan it is moost [nede], 206/2238
he hasteth wel that wisely kan abyde, And in wikked
haste is no profit, 207/2244
thre thynges dryuen a man out of his hous ... Smoke,
droppynge of Reyn, and wikked wyues, 209/2276
he pat soone deemeth, soone repente, 212/2325
he that to muche embraceth, distreyneth litel, 218/2405
for to do synne is mannyssh, but, certes, for to perseuer
longe in sinne, is werk of the deuel, 221/2454
Ther is an old prouerbe, quod she, seith,
That the good-nesse pat thou mayst do this day, do it, and abide nat
ne delaye it nat til to morwe, 248/2984, 2985
Of fieble trees ther comen wrecched ympe, 254/3146
Mordre wol out, 289/4242
the latter ende of ioye is wo (Petrus Comestor), 293/4395
what pat god forwoot, moot nedes bee, 294/4424
A theef of venyson, that hath forlaft
His likerousnesse and al his olde craft,
Kan kepe a florest best of any man, 305/83—85
Of alle tresons souereyn pestilence
Is whan a wight bitrayseth Innocence, 305/91, 92
Vnder a shepherde, softe and necligent,
The wolf hath many a sheepe and lamb to-renf, 306/101,
fforsaketh synne, er synne yow yow forsake, 311/286
ffor peril is, bothe fyr and tow tassemble, 336/89
God clepeth folk to hym, in sondry wyse,
And euerich hath of god a propre yifte,
Som this, som that, as hym liketh shifte, 337/102—104
Who so pat wol nat be war by othere men,
By hym shul othere men corrected be, 339/180, 181
Ne noon so grey goos gooth in the lake,
As seistow wol been with-oute make, 341/269, 270
Of alle men, his wysdom is the hyeste,
That rekketh neuere who hath the world in honde, 343/326, 327
He is to greet a nygard that wolde werne
A man to lighte his candle at his lanterne, 343/333, 334
Who so comth first to Mille, first grynt, 345/389
With empty hand men may none haukes lure, 345/415
Greet prees at Market maketh deere ware,
And to greet cheepe is holde at litel prys, 348/522, 523
Who sothat buyldeth his hous al of salwes,
And priketh his blynde hors ouer the falwes,
Is worthy to been hanged on the galwes, 352/655
er pat thonder stynte, comth a reyn, 354/732
fful selde vp riseth, by his branches smale,
Prowsesse of man, for god, of his goodnesse,
Wole that of hym we clayme oure gentillesse,
fl'or of oure eldres may we no thyng clayme
But temporel thyngs pat man may hurte and mayme, 366/1128—1132
he is gentil that dooth gentil dedis, 367/1170
Glad pouerte is an'honeste thyng, certeyn, 368/1183
ffreres and feendes been but lyte a-sonder, 383/1674
Lo ech thyng that is oned in it selue,
Is moore stronge than whan it is toscatered, 392/1968, 1969
With-Inne thyng hou s ne be thou no leoun, 393/1989
Bountee comth al of god, nat of the strene
Of which they been engendred and ybore, 408/157, 158
Lowe is noght oold as whan pat it is newe, 430/857
Bet is, quod he, a pyk than a pykerel,
And bet than olde boef is the tendre veel, 448/1419, 1420
Noon in this world that trotteth hool in al, 451/1538
Lo pitee renneth soone in gentil herte, 463/1986
But worldly Ioye may nat alwey dure, 465/2055
Passe ouer is an ese, 467/2115
As many heddes, as manye wittes ther been, 484/203
That pitee renneth soone in gentil herte, 492/479
by the whelpe chasted is the leon, 492/491
A trewe wight and a theef thenken nat oon, 494/537
That I made vertu / of necessitee, 495/593
Therfore bihoueth hire a ful long spoon
That shal ete with a feend, 495/602, 603
That alle thyng repaireynge to his kynde,
Gladeth hym selve, thus seyn men, as I gesse, 495, 496/608, 609

Pacience is an heigh vertu, certeyn,
ffor it venguysseth, as thise clerkes seyn,
Thynges pat rigour sholde neuere atteyne, 502/773—775
Lerneth to suffre, or elles, so moot I goon,
Ye shul it lerne wher so ye wolte or noon, 502/777, 778

That pat is ouerdoon, it wol nat preeue
Arigh, as clerkes seyn, it is a viche, 549/645, 646

(Onne nimium vertitur in vitium.)

ffor whan a man hath ouer greet a wit,
fful oft hym happeth to mysusen it, 549/648, 649
he that gilty is

Demeth alle thyng be spoke of hym, ywis, 550/688, 689
ffor vn-to shrewes, ioye it is and ese,
To haue hir felawes in peyne and disese, 552/746, 747

But euery thyng which pat seineth as the gold,
Nis nat gold, as pat I haue herde told,
Ne euery appul that is fair to eye,
Nis nat good, what so men clappe or crye, 558, 559/962-965

Of euery ordre som shreve is, pardee, 560/995
bet than neuere is late, 572/1410
Ye been as boold as is Bayard the blynde, 572/1413
Dun is in the Myre, 576/5
The word moot nede accord with the dede, 583/208. See 21/742

litel Langlyng causeth muchel rest, 587/350
Thyng that is seyd, is seyd, and forth it gooth, 587/355
many smale maken a greet, 616/362
PRAYERS, ENTREATIES, IMPRECATIONS, ETC.

God spede you, 73/2558
God saue swich a lord, 73/2563
God shilde that he deyde sodeynly, 98/3427
ffor Ihesus loue, 106/3717
for Cristes swete tree, 108/3767
for goddes banes, 117/4073
for cristes peyne, 117/4084
ffor Cristes saule, 122/4263
for cristes passion, 125/4327
I pray to god so yeue me sorwe and care, 125/4335
god forbede, 125/4339 ; 207/2248
for the loue of god and of Seint John, 129/18
god hym see, 134/156
I pray to god in honour hire susteene, 134/160
almyghty god thee gyde, 137/245
crist that starf for our sauacion
So yeue me grace heeestes to fulfille, 138/283, 284
Ihesu crist be with you alle, 139/318
He that is lord of ffortune be thy steere, 144/448
Osanne, 150/642
thanked be cristes grace, 151/686
Lord, wel come be thy lust and thy pleasaunce
My lust I putte al in thyn ordinance, 154/762, 763
lord, ay wel come be thy sonde, 156/826
heryd be goddes grace, 157/872
ffor wynd and weder, almyghty god purchace, 157/873
god yeve him meschance, 159/914
cristes mooder, blessed be she ay, 160/950
Now god, quod he, and hise halwes brighte
So wisly on my soule as haue mercy, 163/1060, 1061
Now Ihesu Crist that of his myght may sende
Toye after wo, gouerne vs in his grace
And kepe vs alle that been in this place. Amen, 166/
1160—1162
God shilde, 172/1356

god take on me vengeance, 173/1383

al so god me saue, 174/1416

God and seint Austyn spede yow and gyde, 175/1449

god shilde yow yow fro care, 175/1454

god vs sende Taillynge ynough vn-to oure lyues ende, 180/1624

Ave Maria, 183/1698

O seinte Marie benedicite, 193/1974

God shilde his cors fro shonde, 197/2098

for goddes dignitee, 199/2109

god yelde yow, 219/1772

I vowe to god, 254/3122

I pray to god yeue him confusioun, 254/3133

God yeue me sorwe, 254/3140

so god yow blesse, 281/3978

god his soule blesse, 296/4485

for seinte charitee, 297/4510

god lat him neuere thee, 300/4622

for the loue of Christ *pat for vs dyde, 323/658

I make auow to goddes digne bones, 324/695

god yow see, 325/715

God saue yow *pat boghte agayn mankynde, 326/766

god yeue his soule reste, 348/501

God lete his soule neuere come in helle, 348/504

god his soule blesse, 348/525

God haue hir soule, 349/530

ffor goddes loue, 364/1060

for goddes loue, 365/1096

God sende hem soone verry pestilence, 370/1264

on goddes name, 371/1276

Grantmercy, 375/1403

I pray to god saue thee, and seint loy, 379/1564

And god *pat made after his ymage

Mankynede, saue and gyde vs alle and some, 381/1642, 164

God saue yow alle saue this cursed frere, 384/1707
Deus hic, 386/1770
God amende defautes, 388/1810
Graunt mercy, 388/1812
for seinte Trinitee, 388/1824
God be thanked of his loone, 389/1861
Te deum, 389/1866
for hym that harwed helle, 396/2107
for seinte Charitee, 396/2119
god yow see, / 398/2169
God yelde yow, 398/2177
god lat hym neuere thee, 399/2207
god lete thee neuere thee, 399/2232
god hym saue, 400/2265
I prey to god so yeue his soule reste, 404/30
as god forbede, 407/136
god forbeede, 437/1076
Grauntmercy, 437/1088
God shilde that it sholde so bifalle, 442/1232
so god yow blesse, 442/1240
ther god his bones corse, 444/1305
a Seinte marie benedicite, 445/1337
god haue yow in his grace, 445/1688
God shilde vs alle from youre aqueyntance, 458/1787
God graunte thee thyn hoomly fo tespye, 458/1792
for goddes loue, 459/1814
God be thyn helpe, 460/1874
for hir loue pat is of heuene queene, 473/2334
God blesse vs and his mooder Seinte Marie, 475/2418
for goddes loue, 491/464
god yeue thee good chaunce, 498/679
for thilke god aboue, 517/1321
god yeue thee chaunce, 518/593
God it amende, 549/651
god yeue it harde grace, 550/665
the foule feend hym quelle, 551/705
Ere that he dye, sorwe haue he and shame, 551/709
god forbede, 560/996; 562/1046, 1064
God kepe vs from his false dissymulynge, 563/1073
Grantaunt mercy, 565/1156
the foule feend hym fecche, 665/1159
for goddes loue, 565/1176
yulee moote he cheeue, 567/1225
Goddes blessyng and his moodres also
And alle halwes, have ye sire Chanon, 567/1243, 1244
the deuel out of his skyn Hym terve (2. 4. 6. torne, 3. 5. turne) I pray to god for his falshede, 568/1273, 1274
ffor loue of god that for vs alle deyde, 570/1351
God it forbeede, 571/1375
grant mercy, 571/1380
God sende euery trewe man boote of his bale, 574/1481
for Cokkes bones, 576/9
god yeue thee sorwe, 576/15
foule moote thou falle, 577/40
on goddes name, 586/318
for Cokkes bones, 590/29
Now faire yow bifalle, 591/68
to do wel god sende yow his grace, 591/74

so browke I myn eie, Gamalyn 10/334
so browke I myn hals, Gam. 12/407
ranked be goddes sende, Gam. 13/419
for cristes passion, Gam. 14/477
so browke I my bone, Gam. 15/489
so euer here I masse, Gam. 15/515
for seint charite, Gam. 15/513
So browke I my chyn, Gam. 17/567
so mote I wel the, Gam. 17/577
euel mote I thruye, Gam. 17/586
so euer here I masse, Gam. 17/595
god sende vs gode, Gam. 19/640
haue god my treuth, Gam. 20/678
for je gode rode, Gam. 21/707
haue god my lyfe, Gam. 21/714
euel mote thu the, Gam. 21/720
so mote I wel the, Gam. 24/833
so god yeue me good rest, Gam. 24/841
God bring vs to je Ioye hat euer shal be, Gam. 26/902
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES AND SUBJECTS
TO
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales
TOGETHER WITH
COMPARISONS AND SIMILES, METAPHORS
AND PROVERBS, MAXIMS, ETC.,
IN THE SAME.

COLLECTED BY
PROF. HIRAM CORSON, LL.D.
OF CORNELL UNIVERSITY.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.,
AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,
AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.
1911, for the issue of 1884.
The Chaucer Society.

Editor in Chief:—Rev. Professor W. W. Skeat, Litt.D.

Hon. Sec.:—W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N.

To do honour to Chaucer, and to let the lovers and students of him see how far the
best unprinted Manuscripts of his works differed from the printed texts, this Society
was founded in 1868. There were then, and are still, many questions of metre, pro-
nunciation, orthography, and etymology yet to be settled, for which more prints of
Manuscripts were and are wanted; and it is hardly too much to say that every line of
Chaucer contains points that need reconsideration. The founder (Dr. Furnivall)
began with The Canterbury Tales, and has given of them (in parallel columns in
Royal 4to) six of the best theretofore unprinted Manuscripts known. Inasmuch as
the parallel arrangement necessitated the alteration of the places of certain tales in
some of the MSS, a print of each MS has been issued separately, following the order
of its original. The first six MSS printed have been: the Ellesmere (by leave of the
Earl of Ellesmere); the Hengwrt (by leave of W. W. E. Wynne, Esq.); the Camb.
Univ. Libr., MS Gg. 4. 27; the Corpus, Oxford; the Petworth (by leave of Lord
Leconfield); and the Lansdowne 851 (Brit. Mus.). The Harleian 7334 has followed,
and the Cambridge Dd., completed by Egerton 2726 (the Haistwell MS.). Specimens
of all accessible MSS of the Tales are now nearly completed, edited by the late Prof.
Zupitza, Ph.D., and Prof. John Koch, Ph.D. Lady Cardigan will not allow her
MS to be seen.

Of Chaucer’s Minor Poems,—the MSS of which are generally later than the best
MSS of the Canterbury Tales,—all the available MSS have been printed, so as to
secure all the existing evidence for the true text.

Of Troilus, Parallel-Texts from the 6 best MSS have been issued (the Campoll
MS also separately), and a 7th MS text of it with the English Boccaccio Comparison.

Autotypes of most of the best Chaucer MSS have been published.

The Society’s publications are issued in two Series, of which the first contains the
different texts of Chaucer’s works; and the Second, such originals of and essays on
these as can be procured, with other illustrative treatises, and Supplementary Tales.

The yearly subscription, which constitutes Membership, is 2 guineas, beginning
with January 1, 1868, and ending with 1910. All the Society’s publications can still
be had—except First Series, No. XLVIII.

The Society’s Hon. Secs. for America are, Prof. Kittredge, of Harvard College,
Cambridge, Mass., for the North and East, and Prof. Bright, of Johns Hopkins
University, Baltimore, for the South and West. Members’ names and subscriptions
should be sent to the Lome Hon. Sec., W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Road, Finsbury
Park, London, N.

FIRST SERIES.

The Society’s issue for 1868, in the First Series, is,

I. The Prologue and Knight’s Tale, of the Canterbury Tales, in 6 parallel
Texts (from the 6 MSS named below), together with Tables, showing the
Groups of the Tales, and their varying order in 38 MSS of the Tales, and
in 5 old printed editions, and also Specimens from several MSS of the
“Moveable Prologues” of the Canterbury Tales.—The Shipman’s Prologue,
and Franklin’s Prologue,—when moved from their right places, and of the
Substitutes for them. (The Six-Text, Part I.)

II—VII. II. The Prologue and Knight’s Tale from the Ellesmere MS, Part I; III.
Hengwrt MS, 164, Pt 1; IV. Cambridge MS Gg. 4. 27, Pt 1; V. Corpus
MS, Oxford, Pt I; VI. Petworth MS, Pt I; VII. Lansdowne MS, 851,
Pt I. (separate issues of the Texts forming Part I of the Six-Text edition.)

The issue for 1869, in the First Series, is,

VIII—XIII. VIII. The Miller’s, Reeve’s, and Cook’s Tales: Ellesmere MS, Part II;
IX. Hengwrt MS, Pt II; X. Cambridge MS, Pt II; XI. Corpus MS,
Pt II; XII. Petworth MS, Pt II; XIII. Lansdowne MS, Pt II, with an
Appendix of “Gamelyn” from six MSS.

(separate issues of the Texts forming the Six-Text, Part II, No. XIV.)

The issue for 1870, in the First Series, is,

XIV. The Miller’s, Reeve’s, and Cook’s Tales, with an Appendix of the Spurious
Tale of Gamelyn, in 6 parallel Texts. (Six-Text, Part II.)

The issue for 1871, in the First Series, is,

XV. The Man of Law’s, Shipman’s, and Priores’s Tales, with Chaucer’s own
Tale of Sir Thopas, in 5 parallel Texts from the MSS above named, and 10
coloured drawings of Tellers of Tales, after the originals in the Ellesmere MS.
(Six-Text, Part III.)

XVI. The Man of Law’s Tale, from the Ellesmere MS. Part III.


XIX. The Shipman’s, Priores’s, and Man of Law’s Tales, from the Petworth MS.
Part III.
XX. The Man of Law's Tale, from the Lansdowne MS. Part III.

(each with woodcuts of fourteen drawings of Tellers of Tales in the Ellesmere MS.)

XXI. A Parallel-Text edition of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part I:—1. 'The Deethe of Blanche the Duchesse,' from Thynne's ed. of 1532, the Fairfax MS 16, and Tanner MS 346; 2. 'The Compleynt to Pite,' 3. 'The Parliament of Fowles,' and 4. 'The Compleynt of Mars,' each from six MSS.


XXIII. Odd Texts of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part I, containing 1. two MS fragments of 'The Parliament of Fowles; 2. the two differing versions of 'The Prologue to the Legende of Good Women,' arranged so as to show their differences; 3. an Appendix of Poems attributed to Chaucer, i. 'The Balade of Pitee by Chaucier'; ii. 'The Cronycle made by Chaucier,' both from MSS written by Shirley, Chaucer's contemporary.


The issue for 1872, in the First Series, is,

XXV. Chaucer's Tale of Melibe, the Monk's, Nun's-Priest's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Wife of Bath's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, in 6 parallel Texts from the MSS above named, with the remaining 13 coloured drawings of Tellers of Tales, after the originals in the Ellesmere MS, and with Specimens of the Variations of 30 MSS in the Doctor-Pardoner Link. (Six-Text, Part IV.)

XXVI. The Wife's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, from the Ellesmere MS, with 9 woodcuts of Tale-Tellers. (Part IV.)

XXVII. The Wife's, Friar's, Summoner's, Monk's, and Nun's-Priest's Tales, from the Hengwrt MS, with 23 woodcuts of the Tellers of the Tales. (Part III.)

XXVIII. The Wife's, Friar's, and Summoner's Tales, from the Cambridge MS, with 9 woodcuts of Tale-Tellers. (Part IV.)

XXIX. A Treatise on the Astrolabe, addressed to his son Lowys, in 1391 A.D., by Geoffrey Chaucer, edited by the Rev. Prof. Walter W. Skeat, M.A.

The issue for 1873, in the First Series, is,

XXX. The Six-Text Canterbury Tales, Part V, containing the Clerk's and Merchant's Tales.

The issue for 1874, in the First Series, is,

XXXI. The Six-Text, Part VI, containing the Squire's and Franklin's Tales.

XXXII. The Clerk's, Merchant's, Squire's, Franklin's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Shipman's, Prioress's Tales, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk's, Nun's-Priest's, Second Nun's Tales, Ellesmere MS, Part V.

XXXIII. The Clerk's, Merchant's, Squire's, Franklin's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Shipman's, Prioress's Tales, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk's, Nun's-Priest's, Second Nun's Tales, Cambridge MS, Part V.

XXXIV. Squire's, Wife of Bath's, Friar's, Summoner's, Clerk's, Merchant's, Franklin's Tales, Corpus MS, Part IV.

XXXV. Squire's, Merchant's, Wife of Bath's, Friar's, Summoner's, Clerk's, Franklin's, Second Nun's Tales, Petworth MS, Part IV.

XXXVI. Squire's, Wife of Bath's, Friar's, Summoner's, Clerk's, Merchant's, Franklin's Tales, Lansdowne MS, Part IV.

The issue for 1875, in the First Series, is,

XXXVII. The Six-Text, Part VII, the Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, and Manciple's Tales, with the Blank-Parson Link.

XXXVIII. Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, Manciple's Tales, Ellesmere MS, Part VI.

XXXIX. Manciple's, Man of Law's, Squire's, Merchant's, Franklin's, Second Nun's, Clerk's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Shipman's, Prioress's Tales, Sir Thopas, Melibeus Tales, Hengwrt MS, Part IV.

XL. Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, Manciple's Tales, Cambridge MS, Part VI.

XLI. Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Shipman's, Prioress's Tales, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk's, Nun's-Priest's, Manciple's Tales, Corpus MS, Part V.

XLII. Second Nun's, Canon's-Yeoman's, Doctor's, Pardoner's, Shipman's, Prioress's Tales, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk's, Nun's-Priest's, Manciple's Tales, Lansdowne MS, Part V.
XLIV. A detailed Comparison of the Troylus and Cryseyde with Boccaccio's Filostrato, with a Translation of all Passages used by Chaucer, and an Abstract of the Parts not used, by W. Michael Rossetti, Esq., and with a print of the Troylus from the Harleian MS 3943. Part I.

XLV. Ryme-Index to the Ellesmere MS of the Canterbury Tales, by Henry Cronie, Esq., M.A. In 8vo for the separate Ellesmere MS.

XLVI. Ryme-Index to the Ellesmere MS, by Henry Cronie, Esq., M.A. In Royal 4to for the Six-Text.

XLVII. Notes and Corrections for the 8vo Ryme-Index, by H. Cronie, Esq., M.A.

The issue for 1876, in the First Series, is,

XLVIII. Autotype Specimens of the Chief Chaucer MSS, Part I, 16 Autotypes, with a Note on the MSS, by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

The issue for 1877, in the First Series, is,

XLIX. The Six-Text, Part VIII, containing the Parson's Tale, with a Table of its Contents; and Mr Cronie's Notes and Corrections for the 4to Ryme-Index.

L—LV. L. The Parson's Tale, Ellesmere MS, Part VII; LI. Hengwrt MS, Part V; LII. Cambridge MS, Part VII; LIII. Corpus MS, Part VI; LIV. Petworth MS, Part VI; LV. Lansdowne MS, Part VI.

The issue for 1878, in the First Series, is,

LVI. Autotype Specimens of the Chief Chaucer MSS, Part II : 9 from the Cambridge MS Gg. 4. 27, and 1 from Lord Leconfield's MS.


The issue for 1879, in the First Series, is,


The issue for 1880, in the First Series, is,


LXI. A One-Text Print of Chaucer's Minor Poems, Part II, containing, VI. Mother of God; VII. Anelida; VIII. The Former Age; IX. Adam Scribeven; X. The House of Fame; XI. Legende; XII. Truth; XIII. Venus; XIV. Seogan; XV. Marriage; XVI. Gentilesse; XVII. Proverbs; XVIII. Stedfastnes; XIX. Fortune; XX. Purse.

LXII. Autotype Specimens of the chief Chaucer MSS. Part III : 2 from Henry V's MS of the Troilus, when he was Prince of Wales (now Mr Bacon Frank's); 1 from Shirley's MS of the ABC at Sion Coll.

The issue for 1881, in the First Series, is,


The issue for 1882, in the First Series, is,


The issue for 1883, in the First Series, is,

LXV. Part II of Mr W. M. Rossetti's Comparison of Chaucer's Troilus and Cryseyde with Boccaccio's Filostrato, completing the work.

The issue for 1884, in the First Series, is,

LXVI—LXXI. 6 Appendices to the 6 MSS of the Six-Text, with Wood-cuts and color Cuts of 6 Tellers of Tales and of 6 emblematical Figures from the Cambridge Univ. MS, Gg. 4. 27, &c., and Process Engravings, for the
Ellesmere MS Part, of the 23 Ellesmere MS Minatures. The Hengwrt MS, Part VI, contains The Canon's Yeoman's Tale from the Lichfield MS.

LXXXII. The Six-Text, Part IX, with colored Cuts of 6 Tellers of Tales and 6 emblematical Figures from the Cambridge Universa MS Gg. 4. 27; and Prof. Hiram Corson's Index to the Subjects and Names of The Canterbury Tales. [Issued in 1911.]

The issue for 1885, in the First Series, is,
LXXXIII. The Harleian MS 7334 of The Canterbury Tales, with Woodcuts of 23 Tellers of Tales from the Ellesmere MS, &c.

LXXXIV. Autotype Specimens of the chief Chaucer MSS. Pt IV. The Ellesmere.

The issue for 1886, in the First Series, is,
LXXXV. Chaucer's Boece from the Cambridge University MS. II. 3. 21.

LXXXVI. Chaucer's Boece from the Additional MS 10,540 in the British Museum, as edited by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris for the E. E. Text Soc. in 1868.


The issue for 1887, in the First Series, is,
LXXXVIII. A Rhyme-Index to Chaucer's Minor Poems, by Miss Isabel Marshall and Miss Lela Porter, in Royal 4to for the Parallel-Text.

The issue for 1888, in the First Series, is,
LXXXIX. A One-Text Print of Chaucer's Troilus, from the Cambssall MS bef. 1415 A.D.

The issue for 1889, in the First Series, is,
LXX. A Rhyme-Index to Chaucer's Minor Poems, by Miss Isabel Marshall and Miss Lela Porter, in 8vo for the One-Text print of the Minor Poems.

The issue for 1890, in the First Series, is,
LXXI. Parallel-Text Specimens of all accessible unprinted Chaucer MSS: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. Part I, from 7 MSS: Cambridge Dd. 4. 24, Christ-Church, Additional 5140, Devonshire, Haistwell (or Egerton 3726), Inglis, Northumberland: the Dd. Group.

LXXII. The Romanant of the Rose, from Thynne's print, 1532, ed. F. J. Furnivall. [Issued in 1911.]

The issue for 1891, in the First Series, is,
LXXIII. A Parallel text of The Romautant of the Rose (of which the first 1705 lines are most probably Chaucer's), from the unique MS at Glasgow, and its French original, Le Roman de la Rose, edited by Dr Max Kaluza. Part I.

LXXIV. A Rhyme-Index to Chaucer's Troilus, by Prof. Skeat, Litt.D.

The issue for 1892, in the First Series, is,
LXXV. Parallel-Text Specimens of all accessible unprinted Chaucer MSS: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. Part II, from 10 MSS.

The issue for 1893, in the First Series, is,
LXXVI. Parallel-Text Specimens of all accessible unprinted Chaucer MSS: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. Part III, from 6 MSS.

The issue for 1894, in the First Series, is,
LXXVII. A Parallel-Text of 3 more MSS of Chaucer's Troilus, the St. John's and Corpus, Cambridge, and Harl. 1239, Brit. Mus., put forth by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I, with a Note by G. C. Macaulay, M.A.

The issue for 1895, in the First Series, is,
LXXVIII. A Parallel-Text of 3 more MSS of Chaucer's Troilus, Part II.

The issue for 1896, in the First Series, will be,
LXXIX. Prof. McCormick's Introduction to Chaucer's Troilus, discussing its MSS, its Text, its Metre and Grammar: 2nd Parallel-Texts, Part III.

The issue for 1897, in the First Series, is,
XC. Parallel-Text Specimens of all accessible unprinted MSS: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale, Part IV, from 17 MSS, edited by the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D., and Prof. John Koch, Ph.D.

The issue for 1898, in the First Series, is,
XCI. Parallel-Text Specimens, Part V: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale, a Six-Text, from 3 MSS and 3 black-letters, edited by Prof. John Koch, Ph.D., and Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

The issue for 1899, in the First Series, is,
XCII. Parallel-Text Specimens, Part VI: The Clerk's Tale, a Six-Text, from 6 MSS not containing The Pardoner's Tale, put forth by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

The issue for 1900, in the First Series, is,
XCIII. Parallel-Text Specimens, Part VII: The Clerk's Tale from the Phillips MS 8299 and the Longleat MS, put forth by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

XCIV. Parallel-Text Specimens, Part VIII: The Pardoner's Prolog and Tale from the Hodson MS 39, put forth by Dr. F. J. Furnivall with an Introduction by Prof. John Koch, Ph.D.
The issue for 1901, in the First Series, is,
XCV. The Cambridge MS Dd. 4. 24. of the Canterbury Tales, completed by the Egerton MS 2726 (the Haistwell MS), ed. F. J. Furnivall. Part I.

The issue for 1902, in the First Series, is,
XCVI. The Cambridge MS Dd. 4. 24. of the Canterbury Tales, completed by the Egerton MS 2726 (the Haistwell MS), with woodcuts of the 23 Tellers of The Canterbury Tales, from the Ellesmere MS—and of 6 Tellers of Canterbury Tales, from the Cambridge MS Gg. 4. 27, ed. F. J. Furnivall. Part II.

XCVII. Parallel-Text Specimens, Part IX: An Introduction to the eight Specimens of Chaucer's Clerk's Tale, by Prof. Dr. John Koch.

(Phere for 1903-1910.)

SECOND SERIES.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1868 is,
1. Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part I. This work includes an amalgamation of Prof. F. J. Child's two Papers (the use of the final -e by Chaucer [in F. Wright's ed. of The Canterbury Tales] and by Gower [in Dr Pauli's ed. of the Confessio Amantis]).
3. A Temporary Preface to the Society's Six-Text edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, attempting to show the right Order of the Tales, and the Days and Stages of the Pilgrimage, &c. &c., by F. J. Furnivall, Esq., M.A.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1869 is,
4. Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part II.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1870 is,
5. Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1871 is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1872 is,
7. Originals and Analogues of some of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, Part I. 1. The original of the Man of Law's Tale of Constance, from the French Chronicle of Nicholas Trivet, Arundel MS 56, ab. 1340 A.D., collated with the later copy, ab. 1400, in the National Library at Stockholm; copied and edited, with a translation, by Mr. Edmund Brock. 2. The Tale of "Merelans the Emperor," englisht from the Gesta Romanorwn by Thomas Hoccleve, in Harl. MS 7333; and 3. Part of Matthew Paris's Vita Offic Prijni, both stories illustrating incidents in the Man of Law's Tale. 4. Two French Fabliaux like the Reeve's Tale. 5. Two Latin Stories like the Friar's Tale.
8. Albertiano of Brescia's Liber Consilii et Consolationis, A.D. 1246 (the Latin source of the French original of Chaucer's Melibe), edited from the MSS, by Dr. Thor Sundby.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1874 is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1875 is,
10. Originals and Analogues of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, Part II. 6. Alphonse of Limoln, a Story like the Prioresse's Tale. 7. How Reyndom caught Chanticleer, the source of the Nun's-Priest's Tale. 8. Two Italian Stories, and a Latin one, like the Pardoner's Tale. 9. The Tale of the Priest's Bladder, a story like the Swynmonge's Tale, being 'Li dis de le Vescie a Pestre,' par Jakes de Basiw. 10. Petarch's Latin Tale of Griselden (with Boccaccio's Story from which it was re-told), the original of the Clerk's Tale. 11. Five Versions of A tree-story like that in the Merchant's Tale. 12. Four Versions of The Life of Saint Cecilia, the original of the Second Nun's Tale. Edited by F. J. Furnivall.
11. Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part IV.
12. Life-Records of Chaucer, Part I, The Robberies of Chaucer by Richard Bredlay and others at Westminster, and at Hatcham, Surrey, on Tuesday, Sept. 6, 1390, with some Account of the Robbers, from the Enrolments in the Public Record Office, by Walford D. Selby, Esq., of the Public Record Office.
18. Thynne's Animadversions (1599) on Speght's Chaucer's Works, re-edited from the unique MS, by Fredk. J. Furnivall, with fresh Lives of William and Francis Thynne, and the only known fragment of The Pilgrim's Tale.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1876 is,
14. Life-Records of Chaucer. Part II, The Household Ordinances of King Edward II, June 1323 (as englised by Francis T. M. in March 1601 A.D.), with extracts from those of King Edward IV, to show the probable duties of Chaucer as Valet or Yeoman of the Chamber, and Esquire, to Edward III of whose Household Book no MS is known; together with Chaucer's Oath as Controller of the Customs, and an enlarged Autotype of Hoeckle's Portrait of Chaucer, ed. by F. J. Furnivall.


17. Supplementary Canterbury Tales: I. The Tale of Beryn, with a Prologue of the merry Adventure of the Pardoner with a Tapster at Canterbury, re-edited from the Duke of Northumberland's unique MS, by Fredk. J. Furnivall. Part I. the Text, with Wm. Smith's Map of Canterbury in 1588, now first engraved from his unique MS, and Ogilby's Plan of the Road from London to Canterbury in 1675.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1878 (there was none in 1877) is,
18. Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works, Part IV 11. On here and there in Chaucer (his Pronunciation of the two e's), by Dr R. F. Wymouth; 12 On an Original Version of the Knight's Tale; 13. The Date (1381) and Personages of the Parliament of Fowles; 14. On Anelida and Arcyte, on Lollius, on Chaucer, and Boccaccio, &c., by Dr. John Koch, with a fragment of a later Portman and Eryste from the Dublin MS D. 4. 18.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1894 (none in 1879, '80, '81, '82, '83, '85) is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1886 is,


Of the Second Series, the issue for 1887 is,


Of the Second Series, the issue for 1888 (wronglly markd No. 27 for 1889) is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1889 is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1890 is,

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1891 is,
28. Observations on the Language of Chaucer's Troilus (a Study of its MSS, their words and forms), by Prof. George Lyman Kittredge, M.A.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1892 is,
Of the Second Series, the issue for 1898 (none in 1893–97) is,
32. Life-Records of Chaucer, Part IV, Enrollments and Documents from the Public Record Office, the City of London Town-Clerk’s Office, &c., ed. R. E. G. Kirk, Esq.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1901 is,
33. R. Brathwait’s Comments on 2 Tales of Chaucer, 1665, ed. Miss C. Spurgeon.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1902 is,
34. Supplementary Canterbury Tales: 3. A New Ploughman’s Tale, being Hoccleve’s English Legend of the Virgin and her Sleeveless Garment, from the Christchurch and Ashburnham MSS, edited by A. Beatty, M.A., Wisconsin.
35. The Pardoner’s Prologue and Tale, a critical edition by John Koch.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1903 is,
36. Analogies of Chaucer’s Canterbury Pilgrimage, the 4-days’ Journey from London to Canterbury and back of the Aragonese Ambassadors, 31 July—3 Aug. 1415, etc., etc., ed. R. E. G. Kirk and F. J. Furnivall. (Published in 1906.)
37. The Development and Chronology of Chaucer’s Works, by John S. P. Tatlock, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of English in the University of Michigan. (Issued in 1907.)

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1904 (published in 1907) is,
39. Studies in Chaucer’s Hous of Fame, by Wilbur Owen Sypherd, Ph.D., Professor of English in Delaware College, U.S.A.
40. The Origin and Development of the Story of Troilus and Criseyde, by Karl Young, Ph.D.
41. The Harleian MS 7394 and Revision of the Canterbury Tales, by Prof. Tatlock, Ph.D.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1905 (published in 1908) is,
42. The Date of Chaucer’s Troilus and other Chaucer matters, by Prof. George Lyman Kittredge, LL.D., Litt.D.
43. The Right-Text Edition of the Canterbury Tales; with especial reference to the Harleian MS 7394, ed. by W. W. Skeat, Litt.D.
44. The Syntax of the Infinitive in Chaucer, by John Samuel Kenyon, Ph.D.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1906 (published in 1910–1) is,
45. A Study of the Miracles of Our Lady, told by Chaucer’s Prioress, by Prof. Carleton Brown, Ph.D.
46. Lydgate’s Siege of Thebes, ed. from the MSS by Prof. Axel Erdmann, Ph.D. Part I, the Text (1911). Part II will be published by the E.E.T.S.

Of the Second Series, the issue for 1907 (to be published in 1912) will be,
47. Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticisms and Allusions, 1362–1900 A.D., by Miss Caroline F. E. Spurgeon, Docteur de l’Université de Paris, and Miss Evelyn Fox. Part I.
48. Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticisms and Allusions, 1362 to 1900 A.D., by Miss Caroline F. E. Spurgeon, Docteur de l’Université de Paris, and Miss Evelyn Fox. Part II.

Among the Texts and Chaucer Essays, &c., preparing for the Society are:—
Further Studies in Chaucer’s Canterbury Tales, by Prof. Tatlock, Ph.D.
A Comparative Study of all the MSS of the Canterbury Tales, by Professor George Stevenson, B.A.
Entries concerning Thomas Chaucer, compiled by R. E. G. Kirk, Esq.

Early English Text Society.

Director: Prof. Israel Gollancz, Litt.D.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N.

Founded by Dr. Furnivall in 1864 to print in its Original Series all our unprinted MS literature; and in its Extra Series to reprint in careful editions all that is most valuable of printed MSS and early printed books. The Subscription, which constitutes Membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. additional for the Extra Series], due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid to the Hon. Sec.